SEARCHABLE PACIFIC NORTHWEST HISTORY

BOOK ONE

ORIGINS

GEOLOGY, NATIVE AMERICANS, SEARCH FOR TRADE



BY

Jim Ruble

© 2018

Amazon Publishing

Seattle, Washington

Native American Inspired Art by Watercolor artist

Barb Ruble

CONTENTS

[HOW TO USE THIS MATERIAL 3](#_Toc82297570)

[WHY DID I UNDERTAKE SEARCHABLE PACIFIC NORTHWEST HISTORY? 4](#_Toc82297571)

[SYNOPSIS 5](#_Toc82297572)

[GEOLOGY 7](#_Toc82297573)

[PACIFIC NORTHWEST INDIANS 23](#_Toc82297574)

[B.C.E.-1499 124](#_Toc82297575)

[1500-1599 147](#_Toc82297576)

[1600-1699 179](#_Toc82297577)

[BIBLIOGRAPHY 207](#_Toc82297578)

[ARTICLES 218](#_Toc82297579)

[ABOUT THE AUTHOR 221](#_Toc82297580)

# HOW TO USE THIS MATERIAL

*Searchable Pacific Northwest History* provides a huge variety of topics to be studied.

I have chosen to use a chronological format that includes a series on indentions something like an outline so additional material could be easily added and existing material shifted to a new location. This also allows the reader to “copy and paste” material from this document into a new document of their own making using the “document search navigator” on their computer (Control F). This access allows anyone to construct an historic document of their own in “outline” form.

With the exception of the sections on Geology and Native Americans in Book One, this document is in chronological order by century, decade, year, month and occasionally week and day. The expanse of time covered in the first two sections makes centuries and even millennia irrelevant. In the remaining chronology events listed out of sequence in an effort make a point are placed in parenthesis ( ) and non-sequential dates in brackets

[ ]. Quotations are in bold print and footnoted.

To construct an historic document of your own requires a two-step process:

1) Our website: <http://searchablehistory.com> provides a TEMPLATE of the “outline” formatting required for the new document. a. [Download this TEMPLATE](http://searchablehistory.com/ebooks/DocumentTemplate.docx) and Save it onto your computer. b. OPEN the TEMPLATE.

2) [Download the MS Word version of this book](http://searchablehistory.com/ebooks/SEARCHABLE-PNW-HISTORY-Book1-Origins.docx). Information COPIED from *Searchable Pacific Northwest History* and PASTED onto the TEMPLATE will result in a new document being generated in chronological order and “outline” form.

For instance, after generating a formatted TEMPLATE on a computer, a student might search the activities of **Juan Ponce de Leon**. Opening *Searchable Pacific Northwest History* and placing “de LEON” into the search navigator shows de Leon is found 37 times. The first instance is in the Synopsis “1500-1599” on page 6 tells where to begin the search. The paragraph “CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE de LEON BECOMES GOVERNOR OF PUERTO RICO” on page 152 begins his exploits. This paragraph can be COPIED and PASTED onto the TEMPLATE.

The next paragraph where “de LEON” is found is “SPANISH CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE de LEON EXPLORES (TODAY’S FLORIDA)” on page 153. This too can be copied and pasted into the TEMPLATE following the first paragraph.

Further examination of the historic document would result in other relevant information being discovered. Adding this material to the “outline” template would produce a document featuring the exploits of Juan Ponce de Leon in chronological order.

# WHY DID I UNDERTAKE SEARCHABLE PACIFIC NORTHWEST HISTORY?

Computers have changed the way we look at history. The study of our past has always been constricted by the space available to present it. The person, topic, or event being studied was confined by the physical limits of books. This constricting of the past is even greater in a history book dedicated to a very broad subject. Each topic must be compressed to fit the space available. These restrictions are no longer necessary with the advent of computers and the internet.

History happens chronologically and in context. However, it is not taught that way. Rather, attention is focused on dates, names and selected topics. For instance, the exploration of Captain George Vancouver might be presented without any mention of the discoveries of Spanish explorers although both investigations occurred simultaneously and sometimes mutually. Also, American sea traders were operating in the Pacific Ocean waters while Alexander Mackenzie was actively conducting his second overland expedition to find the Pacific Ocean. Events do not occur in isolation.

The topics of missionaries to the Pacific Northwest and Hudson’s Bay Company might be presented without acknowledging both entities were dealing with the same Native Americans at the same time. These interactions had a unique impact on the Indians. Or, similarly that Northwest Indian wars and Indian treaties are presented without mentioning the treaties came before the wars. Presenting history one topic at a time, while necessary until now, makes historic context almost impossible.

Presenting history one topic at a time also presents a false image of the time necessary to accomplish a task. When students are introduced to the Oregon Trail, attention is perhaps paid to the preparations essential for the journey and the sacrifices necessary. The route West is depicted passing by a series of prominent land features, hardships for the travelers may be indicated, and Oregon is reached three paragraphs or three pages after setting out depending on the detail of the text. There is no feeling for the nine months the journey on foot took to complete. The neglect of the amount of time necessary to accomplish a goal is so frequent in history books that this could, perhaps, account for the instant gratification so often demanded today.

Those of us who enjoy reading history are intrigued with adding new information to what we have previously discovered. Each addition provides an opportunity to gain new insight. We are aware that previous generations faced challenges and mysteries much like our own. Discovering how these demands were met, successfully or unsuccessfully, in the past can guide us as we seek answers to our own personal and collective dilemmas. Most history instructors strive to teach their students *about* history. My goal is to enable students to learn *from* history. As President Harry Truman noted: “The only thing new in the world is the history you don’t know.”

The internet has opened a vast amount of previously unavailable historic material. The writings of early Northwest historians such as Hubert Bancroft, Cecil Dryden and Oscar Osburn Winther, as well as participants who wrote about their activities are now available on line as are compilations of historic societies and the perceptions of individual authors. More information is being added every day. Access to this material is invaluable in appreciating and understanding our past. It needs to be added to our current understanding.

# SYNOPSIS

GEOLOGY

In this document you will find a chronological listing of geologic time broken down by Eons, Eras, Periods and Epochs relayed in terms of a twenty-four clock. Significant events are noted such as volcanic activities, glacial events, the formation of glacial valleys and river valleys, various mountains, Lake Missoula, Grand Coulee, Dry Falls, Channeled Scablands and Puget Sound are noted. The advent of fishes, reptiles, dinosaurs and mammals are indicated. In contrast, a Chinook Indian legend that attempts to explain the earliest times is also included.

NATIVE AMERICANS

In this document the earliest people to live in the Pacific Northwest such as Marmes Man, Buhl woman, and Kennewick Man, are investigated as are theories of their origin. Coastal and Plateau Native language and culture are contrasted. Indian beliefs in the spirit world and the role of the shaman are considered. Ceremonial activities such as the potlatch, salmon ceremony and winter ceremony are examined. Class structure including slavery and political life are discussed. Native interaction with the environment, housing, Ozette village, and transportation including canoe making are presented. Fishing and hunting activities and Makah whaling are investigated. Native art work represented by clothing, jewelry, basket making and wood working is explored. Food gathering, cooking and serving, especially salmon, are presented. Attention is also placed on the cycle of life from birth to death. The impact of European and American invaders on native lives are considered.

B.C.E.-1499

An understanding of the history of the Pacific Northwest must begin prior to any European contact. This document begins with the Roman Empire and the efforts of early European and Chinese merchants who strived to establish trade. European and Chinese explorers set out to develop trade routes such as the Silk Road, develop cities as trading centers and generate wealth. Viking raiders, crusaders, Mongol invaders and Venice merchant Marco Polo each generated interest in expanding trade.

Europe sought newer, easier routes to the East. Portugal dispatched Bartholomew Dias to explore the coast of West Africa. Spain sent explorers who reached the “New World” beginning with Christopher Columbus (four voyages) inaugurating the “Age of Discovery.” Portugal and Spain, both Catholic nations, encountered a world not noted in the Bible. Pope Alexander VI, who realized their quest could lead to war, drew a “Line of Demarcation” dividing the New World between Portugal and Spain. England’s John Cabot took a northerly route to the New World (three voyages) perhaps naming “Newfoundland.”

1500-1599

Interest in the “New World” was motivated by the rivalry between Portugal and Spain. Spain sent conquistadors Juan Ponce de Leon and Vasco Nunez de Balboa, to the New World to exploit her discovery. Portugal sent explorer Jorge Alvares across the Pacific Ocean to China. Spain continued its New World exploitation with Hernan Cortes, Juan Ponce de Leon, Pedro de Alvarado, Francisco Pizarro, Hernando de Soto and Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo. Portugal’s Ferdinand Magellan attempted to sail around the world but he died when reaching the Philippines. His crew succeeded. As Spain reached the Philippines, France sent Jacques Cartier to find a shorter route to China.

Portugal created a business monopoly in the city of Macau, China. Muscovy Company was chartered in England to trade with Russia. England took an interest in North America as the Muscovy Company financed two investigations by Martin Frobisher. Francis Drake explored the western shore of North America by sea for England. Spain’s mysterious Juan de Fuca claimed to discover a “Northwest Passage” to China through North America. France became interested in the lucrative continental fur trade and abundant fishing off Canada’s Grand Banks

1600-1699

France showed an early interest in l’Acadie (Canada) when Francois Grave Pontgrave led an effort to build a colony. Samuel de Champlain explored the St. Lawrence River. Pierre Du Gua de Monts began trade between France and l’Acadie as the colony of Saint Croix Island was established.

England chartered the Virginia Company of London which established Jamestown colony. English merchants hired Henry Hudson to find a Pacific route to Asia. Pilgrims arrived in America.

Company of De Caen was Chartered by France and liquor was brought into l’Acadie (Canada) in large barrels to enhance trade with the natives. l’Acadie became known as “New France.” Cardinal Richelieu created a fur trading monopoly in New France which brought wealth to the owners and vast changes to the Indians.

Massachusetts Bay Company was chartered bringing Puritans to America. Pierre Espirit Raddison with his brother-in-law Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers explored and traded in the upper Mississippi River region bringing out a fortune in furs. Hudson’s Bay Company (HBC), chartered by England, developed a system of trading posts. Father Jacques Marquette and Louis Joliet traveled the Mississippi River almost to the Gulf of Mexico which was later reached by Robert La Salle. York Factory was established by HBC whose trading posts were raided by independent French fur traders.

SEARCHABLE PACIFIC NORTHWEST HISTORY

BOOK ONE: EXPLORATION

I. GEOLOGY, II. PACIFIC NORTHWEST INDIANS, III. B.C.E.-1699

# GEOLOGY

HISTORY OF EARTH REMAINS SHROUDED IN MYSTERY

Earth has existed for billions of years in a variety of changing forms our world appears

to have begun as a fiery ball a condition would have been permanent

except for the effects of air surrounding the planet

air is responsible for most of the changes on the earth’s surface

Unimaginable changes have occurred on the surface of the Earth during its existence

truly remarkable animals have populated the planet, sometimes for vast amounts of time,

and have died out

only a select few animals, fish, insects and organism have survived

humans occupied the planet very late in the Earth’s history

GEOLOGIC TIME IS INCOMPREHENDIBLE

In an effort to understand the vast amounts of time and enormous changes

during Earth’s historyscientists have developed a timeline composed of two **“Eons”**

**Precambrian** Eon and **Phanerozoic** Eonare the largest division of geologic time

To grasp the unimaginable amounts of time required to develop earth as we know it today

it is sometimes convenient to think in terms of a twenty-four clock[[1]](#footnote-1)

with vast amount of time compared to each hour on that clock

representation of time on our twenty-four clock varies by author

but usually not by significant amounts in relation to 4.6 billion years

**“PRECAMBRIAN ERA**” -- THE OLDEST KNOWN PORTION OF GEOLOGIC TIME

Over billions of years the earth’s surface cooled enough to form a solid crust

surface of the planet was formed and reformed many times over these billions of years

it was a time of great volcanic activity and mountain building

basins of cooled Earth saw water in the form of steam cool

and form ponds, lakes and oceans

cracks developed in the cool rock allowing water to enter and freeze and thaw

**Precambrian Era** lasted from about 4.6 billion years ago to about 540 million years ago

this is about ninety percent of the time the planet has existed, or about 4.5 billion years

during much of this era Earth remained in a molten (liquid) form

with the exception of zircons dating back 4.4 billion years there was not even rock

**Precambrian Eon** is composed of three “Eras”

**Hadean Era, Archean Era** and **Proterozoic Era**

**Precambrian Eon’s Hadean Era** was from about 4.6 billion to 3.8 billion years ago

or from midnight to 4:10:26 a.m. on our twenty-four-hour clock

single cellular life appears before 4:00 a.m.

**Precambrian Eon’s Archean Era** was from about 3.8 billion to 2.5 billion years ago

or from 4:10:26 t0 10:57:23 a.m. on our twenty-four-hour clock

photosynthesis begins around 5:30 a.m.

**Precambrian Eon’s Proterozoic Era** was from 2.5 billion to 542 million years ago

or from 10:57:23 a.m. to 9:10:20 p.m. on our twenty-four-hour clock

in this huge amount of time multicellular life appears around 5:30 p.m.

Very little is known about the climate during the Precambrian Era

but the Earth was driven into a very cold glacial age at the end of the era

Using our proposed twenty-four clock to represent the vast amounts of time in Earth history

this era would be depicted as lasting from midnight to about 9:10:20 p.m.

or lasting more that twenty-one of the twenty-four hours

Remainder of time composes the **Phanerozoic** Eon from 9:10:20 p.m.to midnight (today)

**PHANEROZOIC EON** ENCOMPASSES ALL OF THE REST OF TIME

Phanerozoic Eon is divided into eras: **Paleozoic Era, Mesozoic Era and Cenozoic Era**

each of these is further divided into **Periods**

each time interval is marked by a relatively abrupt change in fossil types and numbers

length of time attributed to each Era, Period and Epoch is, of course, approximate

(and sometimes are simply wild guesses)

**Cenozoic Era** time **Periods** can be further divided **Epochs**

**PALEOZOIC ERA** CAN BE DIVIDED INTO **PERIODS**

There is enough fossil material to divide the Paleozoic Era into eight identifiable **Periods**

Cambrian, Ordovician, Silurian, Devonian, Mississippian, Pennsylvanian,Carboniferous

and Permian

**Paleozoic Era** lasted from about 540 million years ago to some 230 million years ago

or from 9:10:20 p.m.to 10:426:24 p.m. on the twenty-four-hour clock

there is enough fossil material to divide the Paleozoic Era into identifiable **Periods**

**“Cambrian Period”** of the Paleozoic Era

lasted from about 540 million years ago to 490 million years ago

(9:10:20 p.m.-9:27:08 p.m. on our twenty-four-hour clock)

sea weed floated on an endless ocean of saltwater in the mild climate

**“Cambrian Explosion”** of life occurred

fossil records show life existed in the ocean waters on the Earth’s surface

these creatures eventually developed shells resembling clams or cockles

and gave rise to the development of sea life lacking a backbone

these invertebrates provided the only living existence on earth

**“sedimentary”** rock was formed by deposits that settled at the bottom of the ocean

weight of mud and pressure from shifting earth compressed the material

into solid form

chemical action further fused this material together

shells of organic (living) material also was deposited and formed into rock

limestone and shale are common sedimentary rocks of this type

**Ordovician Period”** lasted from about 490 million years ago to 440 million years ago

(9:27:08 p.m.-9:42:06 p.m.)

primitive fish and fungi developed as the first complex life-forms

land first emerged slightly above the world of water

heat and pressure forced molten (“igneous”) rock from the Earth’s interior

lifting the sedimentary rock upwards through the surrounding water

mountain ranges were formed by igneous rock lifting sedimentary rock

volcanoes ejected lava, pumice (volcanic glass) and ash

during the uplifts, seas were drained exposing sedimentary and igneous rock

high sea levels fell as the earth cooled as ice formed in the Arctic and Antarctic regions

primitive plants appeared on the land

this period ended with huge glaciers formed as great flows of ice grew in size

extinction wiped out many plant and animal species

**Silurian Period** lasted from about 440 million years ago to about 417 million years ago

(9:41:06 p.m. to 9:49:46 p.m.)

first plants capable of conducting water (as compared to mosses) appeared on the land

high sea levels existed worldwide leading to the rise of hinged-shelled species and corals

starfish-like and sea urchin-like creatures appeared

fossils of the first jawed fishes and insects like centipedes and millipedes appeared

“**Devonian Period”**lasted from about 417 million years ago to about 354 million years ago

(9:40:46 p.m.-10:07:33 p.m.)

this was the “Age of Fishes” as fish and land plants become abundant and diverse

sharks and water vertebrates emerged on the earth

new insects also made an appearance

air breathing animals appeared on dry land

mass extinction at the end of the era wiped out 30% of all animal families

probably due to an increase in the size and number of glaciers

or the impact of a meteorite striking the Earth

**Mississippian Period** lasted from about 354 million years ago to 323 million years ago

(10:07:33 p.m.-10:19:03 p.m.)

much of North American was elevated above the primal sea

winged insects come into existence

this was the age of amphibians that developed into great abundance

first reptiles came into existence

first forests spread across the planet

coal developed from decayed plant life subjected to vast amounts of heat and pressure

Pacific coast made its first appearance during this coastal “First Geologic Age”

land composed of two granite islands began to rise up from depths of the sea

one known as Siskiyou Island was in the region of today’s Siskiyou Mountains

located three hundred miles east of today’s coastline

in Northern California and Southern Oregon

another known as Shoshone Island, was in the heart of today’s Blue Mountains

of southeast Washington and northeast Oregon

both Shoshone and Siskiyou islands were thrust up far into the ocean

cut off from the continent -- ancient coast line was thus two island groups

fossils from this period were tropical life forms that were washed by warm seas

these left a record of ancient beach levels

an immense bay was created on Shoshone Island high in the Blue Mountains

streams brought down massive mineral deposits of silt and sands

that reached a thickness of many thousands of feet deep on the ocean floor

these massive deposits gradually hardened into sedimentary rocks

such as limestone, sandstone and shale

magnetite mineral veins in today’s Stevens Country were formed

by heat and pressure from calcium and magnesium salts

located on the ocean floor

seismic disturbances such as earthquakes and volcanic eruptions were so violent

that old sedimentary rock of the ocean bed was sometimes changed

to “metamorphic”rock by heat and pressure

for example, marble could be transformed from limestone and slate from shale

at about the same time uplifts took place as the continent slowly rose and expanded

in response to pressure from the shrinking crust of the Earth

rocks were massed and folded together -- ground level was elevated -- water receded

what had been the bottom of the sea now became dry land

vast barrier of pinnacled peaks composed of the Okanogan Uplift

and Chelan Uplift appeared

granite and porphyry (reddish purple rock) broken by flows of volcanic lava

was veined with gold, silver and copper

**Pennsylvanian Period**lasted from 323 million years ago to about 290 million years ago

(10:19:03 p.m.-10:26:24 p.m.)

this was the age of large winged insects and amphibians which flourished

land of the Pacific Northwest saw alternating periods of flooding and drying

silt carried by the many rivers eventually filled in the bays

which had been thousands of feet deep in places

rocks such as schist, marble, slate and quartzite were formed

masses of melted rock fused with silver, gold and other metals

were thrust upward through the earth’s crust

**Permian Period** lasted from about 290 million years ago to about 230 million years ago

(10:26:24 p.m.-10:41:26 p.m.)

reptiles and amphibians developed as a life form in the Northwest

this “Second Geologic Age” for today’s Pacific coast was the “Age of Volcanoes”

uplifting of the Blue Mountains and Cascade Mountains from the ocean floor ended

as the Earth’s crust cooled and shrank

lava floods rose from fissures and vents in the Earth which formed all over the region

molten glassy or porous lava, cinders or ash welled up and forcibly spewed out

from these cracks in the Earth’s surface becoming sheets that cooled into rock

land formations were blown apart by volcanic eruption and seismic forces

vast outflows of shiny, black volcanic basalt and gray fine-grained andesitic rock

swept westward from the Blue Mountains to meet similar flows

moving eastward from Cascade Mountains

these molten masses, called magma, cooled slowly and hardened

frequently the fiery floods of molten rock transformed original rocks

into various metamorphic forms of gneiss, porphyry and marble

greatest result of the Age of Volcanoes was the elevation of stupendous isolated peaks

cooling lava, cinders and ash built up enormous peaks such as Mt. Rainier, Mt. Baker,

Mt. Adams, Mt. St. Helens, Glacier Peak, Goat Rocks, Silver Star Mountain

and West Crater in Washington’s Cascade Mountain Range

Mt. Olympus, Mt. Constance, Mt. Anderson, The Brothers (double peaked),

Mt. Deception, Mt. Angeles, Boulder Peak and Mt. Storm King

in the Olympic Mountain Ranger appear to be no longer active

sometimes intervals of centuries stretched between lava flows

one of greatest lava flows of all time inundated a large part of Eastern Washington

Columbia River basalt, one the largest bodies of lava in the world,

covered a great part of Washington and Snake River plain in Idaho,

eastern Oregon and much of Northern California -- 250,000 square miles

in some places, lava flowed over a mile deep

mountain chains were in place with the close of the “Age of Volcanoes”

but plains and valleys visible today were not yet fashioned

five regions of Washington State came into existence during the Permian Period:

•Olympic Peninsula of the Pacific coast was composed of a narrow plain

with towering Olympic Mountains in the north and the Willapa Hills to the south

Mount Olympus (8,150 foot) is surrounded by jumble of jagged peaks

Willapa Hills, built of softer materials, are now much lower

as they have worn down rather rapidly

numerous lakes, glaciers and rivers occur today in the region

glaciers have cut deeply into the Olympic Mountains

some remnants of old deposits still can be seen in higher elevations

heaviest rainfall in the continental United States occurs here at Grays Harbor,

Willapa Bay and in the dark rain forests of the Olympic Peninsula

this is one of the most heavily forested regions of North America

dense growths of spruce, fir, cedar and hemlock cover the region

and display almost impenetrable undergrowth

•Puget Sound Lowland represents only about five percent of the area of the state

it runs from the Canadian border on the north to the Columbia River on the south

Puget Sound gouged by glaciers from various “Ice Ages” is the heart of the region

eons ago the region was uplifted above surrounding lands to the east and west

but being composed of softer rock it was easily eroded by wind, rain and frost

here are excellent harbors and great forests of cedar, hemlock, spruce and fir

many important rivers are located in the region

Cowlitz River flows into the Columbia River at today’s Kelso and Longview

Chehalis River flows west emptying into Grays Harbor at Aberdeen

Carbon Rivers enter the Puyallup River at Orting

as does the White River at Sumner

Puyallup, Nisqually, Snohomish, Skagit, Nooksack rivers

empty into Puget Sound

of these, the Snohomish River is the largest in volume

•Cascade Mountain Range spans north and south in a series of earth folds

they have a foundation of granite, volcanic and sedimentary rock

at the Canadian border these mountains spread east and west

for one hundred twenty miles

Columbia River carved a spectacular gorge through sixty miles of mountains

Cascade Mountains create two separate climate zones in the State of Washington

its western slopes receive the most rainfall from the Pacific Ocean

eastern slopes experience drought

as the mountains cut off the Pacific’s moisture

many important rivers in Washington have their source in the Cascade Mountains

several have been harnessed to generate electric power

Cowlitz, Lewis, Skagit, Snoqualmie and White rivers

elevations in the Cascades vary from lofty peaks to low passes

four peaks are active volcanoes in Washington:

-Mt. Rainier (14,408’ but 2,000’ blew off leaving a crater two miles wide)

two cinder cones rose to form the present summit;

-Mt. Adams (12,307’);

-Mt. Baker (10,730’);

-Mt. St. Helens (9,697’ before the 1980 eruption it is now 8,366 feet high)

most well-known of the Cascade Mountain passes are:

-Rainy Pass (4,855 ft.) on State Route Highway 20;

-Washington Pass (5,477 ft.) on State Highway 20;

-Stevens Pass (4,061 ft.) on U.S. Highway 2;

-Snoqualmie Pass (3,022 ft.) on U.S. Interstate Highway 405;

-Cayuse Pass (4,675 ft.) on State Highway 410 and U.S. Highway 12;

-Chinook Pass (5,430 ft.) on State Route Highways 410;

-White Pass (4,500 ft.) on U.S. Highway Highways 12;

Blewett Pass, formerly known as Swauk Pass, (4,124 feet) U.S. Highway 97

runs north and south along the spine of the mountain range

it links Wenatchee, Washington in the north to Ellensburg on the south

•Columbia River Basin also known as the Columbia Plateau

occupies more than one-fourth of the area of the state

from the Cascade Mountains to Spokane, Washington

Columbia Basin is surrounded by mountains and uplands:

-east are the Rocky Mountains,

-south are the Blue Mountains and Horse Heaven Hills,

-west are the Cascade Mountains,

-north are the Okanogan Highlands and Selkirk Range

saucer shaped Columbia Basin was broken country

with lakes and wooded mountains before lava flows took place

and volcanic basalt rock poured into the mold

today ancient mountain summits still remain as hills

volcanic rock covers much of the shattered fragments of the original crust

however, in many places primeval granite or sandstone remains uncovered

to the north the Waterville Plateau drops one thousand feet

to form Quincy Basin which extends up the Okanogan Valley

to Omak, Washington

at the southern end of the Columbia Basin is the Pasco Basin

eastward is the Palouse Country where the Palouse Hill were built up

from loess (yellow-brown sediment mixed with volcanic ash)

winds have formed the fertile loess into long dunes

Steptoe Butte, prehistoric crystalline rock rises 1,200 feet above bedrock

and more than 3,600 feet above sea level

Columbia Basin today is known for wheat lands, irrigated farms, orchards

and electric power projects

•Okanogan Highlands extend across northern Eastern Washington into Canada

lava flows did not invade this region which today is composed of

older basalt rock and granite -- some of the oldest rock in the state

these include schist, and ancient granite all formed millions of years ago

there is an abundance of minerals such as: gold, silver, copper, lead, zinc,

and some tungsten and uranium

Okanogan Highlands are noted for their long north-south trench valleys

with rivers that have cut deep canyons down the center

best known of these rivers are:

-Colville and Pend d’Oreille rivers which flow to the north

-Columbia, Okanogan, and San Poil rivers which flow south

-Kettle and Methow rivers which flow southeast

these valleys are ideal for farming, dairying, stock-raising

and fruit-growing

**Permian Period** ended with the largest mass extinction as yet known

fifty percent of all animal families, ninety-five percent of all marine species

and many trees became extinct perhaps because of glaciations or volcanic activity

**MESOZOIC ERA** IS THE FIRST EXPANSE OF TIME OF THE **PHANEROZOIC EON**

This “Third Geologic Age” in the Pacific Northwest was a time of flooding and drying

**Mesozoic Era** lasted from about 230 million years ago to some 60 million years ago

or from about 9: 57 p.m.to about 10:57 p.m. on the twenty-four-hour clock

this was known as the “Age of Reptiles”

**Triassic Period** lasted from about 230 million years ago to about 200 million years ago

(10L41:26 p.m.-10:57:31 p.m.)

during this period mollusks were the dominant invertebrates on Earth

many reptiles, for example, turtles came into existence as did insects such as flies

animal life diversified as the first dinosaurs and mammals appeared on the Earth

Northwest was flooded and dried several times during this period

upheavals of mingled granite and volcanic masses took place

in the Cascades, Blue Mountains and Rockies

this process imprisoned a vast sea over today’s Eastern Washington

deposits of sediment were formed hundreds and thousands of feet in depth

Yakima, Walla Walla and Spokane rivers formed smooth valleys and lesser streams

similar processes fashioned the valleys of the Willamette River and other streams

between the Cascades and the Coastal Mountains to the west

Triassic period ended with minor extinctions that allowed dinosaurs to expand their range

**Jurassic Period** lasted from about 200 million years ago to about 145 million years ago

(10:57:31 p.m.- 11:14:27 p.m.)

flesh-eating and plant-eating dinosaurs ranged over vast areas of the planet

formerly cold climate turned mild and humid

birds and flowering plants made their first appearance

**Cretaceous Period** lasted from about 145 million years ago to about 60 million years ago

(11:14:27 p.m.-11:39:30 p.m.)

this is the “Age of Dinosaurs”

first feathered dinosaurs and crocodile-like creatures appeared

as did the earliest-known butterflies

and the earliest-known snakes, ants and bees

this is the period of greatest flooding in the Pacific Northwest

**CENOZOIC ERA** INCLUDES TODAY

**Cenozoic Era** includes two Periods: **Tertiary Period** and **Quaternary Period**

**Cenozoic Era** lasted from about 60 million years ago to about 1.8 million years ago

or from about 11:52 p.m.to midnight (today) on the twenty-four-hour clock

vast climate changes took place around the globe over the millions of years

global warming events alternated with ice ages

**Tertiary Period**lasted from about 60 million to the neighborhood of 30 million years ago

(11:39:30 p.m.-11:59:11 p.m.)

North America roughly took shape as general erosion altered the landscape

grasses were in abundance on the land

this vegetation was subtropical in the then-low Cascade Mountains

this period saw the first large mammals and primitive primates

sediment in the lake bottoms accumulated at a rate of a fraction of an inch a year

and over vast amounts of time reached a thickness of 3,000 feet in places

a record of subtropical plant life on lake bottoms was left as fossils

these marshy Cascade Mountain lakes became beds of coal

Rocky Mountains were elevated to a height which created great snow fields

and continued to rise by volcanic and folding action

Cascade Mountains saw extensive volcanic activity which elevated these mountains

many layers of lava flows have been counted

after the seventh lava flow from the top had cooled, many feet of soil accumulated

sufficient time elapsed for trees six feet in diameter to grow

sixth flow of lava from the top buried this forest -- fossil trees may still be seen

Cascades became high enough to block rain carried inland from the ocean

Eastern Washington developed an arid climate and was slowly changed

into a system of great fresh-water lakes that became the Columbia River

and its tributaries

bed of the Columbia River through the mountains

had already eroded to a depth of 900 feet

extensive volcanic ash and sedimentation covered Washington State

streams of lava poured down the valleys and created today’s Spokane Falls

fractures occurred along the ocean floor as the granite and surrounding rock cooled

quantities of liquid granite were forced up and through ocean deposits

baking these rocks into shale, schist, quartzite and marble

silica containing metals flowed into these fissures becoming veins of ore

ores, gold, silver, copper, lead and zinc infused with liquid granite

volcanic activity continued in southern Oregon’s Cascade Mountains

Mt. Mazama, a 12,000-foot-high volcano, fell into its own crater

springs of water filled in the great hole to a depth of 2,000 feet

Crater Lake came into existence

Mt. Multnomah, a 16,000-foot-high volcano, was destroyed by a violent eruption

choking the crater except for three small volcanic cones

that formed Three Sisters peaks

this circular group of mountains show a far greater crater once existed

these peaks are the third, fourth and fifth highest mountains in Oregon

Olympic Mountains appeared but only as a chain of islands off the Pacific coast

Pacific Ocean remained in place long enough to deposit mud and silt

which captured sea animals

Puget Sound region rocks were formed by acquiring sediment

swamps were repeatedly covered with sand as the ocean periodically rose and fell

old lake bed was turned to rock, tilted and crumpled by earthquakes

emptying out its waters -- huge inland sea was drained or evaporated

mammals, as shown by fossil remains, abounded in the Puget Sound region:

•one animal, the oreodon, presented a curious assemblage of parts

that suggested a kinship to the deer, hog and camel

types varied -- some were as small as a fox; others were as large as an elk;

•little horses with three toes (mesohippus) existed in great numbers

they varied in size from the size of a large dog to that of a donkey;

•rhinoceros lived on the shores of the earliest lakes;

•several varieties of hogs and fierce dogs of great size

roamed the Puget Sound area;

•cats similar to the cougar armed with long, slender teeth were frequently found

as were the remains of miniature deer no larger than a rabbit

modern birds could be seen in the Puget Sound region

first hominids (human-like australopithecines) appeared on the planet in Africa

approximately four million years ago (11:59 on the twenty-four-hour clock)

relatively complete skeleton named **“Lucy”** was found in Ethiopia

by Donald Johnson -- 1978

she was named after the popular Beatles’ 1967 song

*Lucy in the Sky with Diamonds*

this female was dated to 3.2 million years ago

these small creatures were four to five feet tall

and weighed between 65 and 120 pounds

australopithecines became extinct about two million years ago

Quaternary Period began about 1.8 million year ago to today (11:59:11 P.M, to midnight)

major glaciers spread across North America and Europe

first humans (Homo sapiens) walked the Earth 200,000 years ago

along with gigantic wooly mammoths which were early relatives of mastodons

and, even later, elephants

wooly mammoths had long curved tusks and course hair falling below their knees

saber-toothed cats and 400-pound ground sloths roamed the region

giant sloths fifteen to eighteen feet long were covered with “mylodon” (long hair)

they could rise on their hind legs to a height of ten feet tall long

sharp claws were both defensive weapons are a way to bring down prey

very thick hide protected them from all predators – except humans

climate turned cold some scientists suggest massive ice sheets were formed

this most recent Ice Age in the Pacific Northwest was at least the fifth time

glaciers had covered the region

ice robbed much of the moisture from the oceans

sea level fell was as much as three hundred feet lower than today

low enough to form a long bridge between Asia and North America

even today North American and Asia remain close via the Bering Strait

scientists discovered as early as 25,000 years ago Alaska’s central interior was ice free

elevation of western American was much higher during this “Glacial Age” than today

mountains were elevated to stupendous heights by upheaval and volcanic action

erosion constantly wore down the surface of the Earth

wind erosion blew topsoil against mountains and uplands wearing them down

rivers washed away soil and cut amazingly deep canyons into solid rock

leaving “V-shaped” river valleys

ice glaciers wore away soil and rock and ground against the mountains

gouging “U-shaped” glacial valleys

there were two types of glaciers

“Continental glaciers” pushed down from the north and repeatedly covered large parts

of northern North America in ice sheets at times reaching over 10,000 feet thick

northern half of today’s Washington was repeatedly covered

as ice thawed and formed

forward edge of the continental glaciers scooped out Puget Sound

and Lake Washington

a tongue of glacial ice one-half mile thick covered Puget Sound

ice over Puget Sound reached its maximum advance southto within a few miles south of today’s Olympia -- 14,000 years ago

“moraine,” glacial junk and coal, was shoved ahead of the glaciers

as they moved very slowly south powered by their own enormous weight

when the Okanogan Valley was covered with ice what is now Clark Fork River

was dammed forming “Lake Missoula” in the Flathead Valley of Montana

Columbia River, which was much larger than it appears today, also was dammed

Columbia forced a new channel where Grand Coulee Dam stands today

this new channel became known as the “Grand Coulee”

it became the world’s greatest example of canyon cut by a glacial river

417-foot-high “Dry Falls,” is thought to be the greatest known waterfall

that ever existed

water 300 feet deep rolled over a cliff nearly three miles wide

pot holes bored by the falls today are known as Deep Lake and Perch Lake

water continued downriver to form Park Lake, Blue Lake, Alkali Lake

and Soap Lake

as the glaciers melted, they left immense basalt boulders: “haystack” rocks

“Moses Coulee” and the “Channeled Scablands” to the north of Grand Coulee

was created when Lake Missoula burst through its ice dam

“Alpine glaciers” of enormous size descended the Western Cascades slopes

powered by its own massive weight these glaciers leveled the ground

as they plowed their way down mountain slopes and scoured the coastal plain

Alpine glacier canyons can be seen today in Washington State and still awe

the largest Alpine glacier advanced from Pend d’Oreille Lake

“Pend d’Oreille Glacier” closed the western end of the Spokane Valley

waters were impounded in the valley and formed a huge lake

other Alpine glaciers on the east side of the Cascades scooped out great lakes

southwest across present-day Spokane as far as Medical Lake and Spangle

beds of Chelan, Okanogan, Kootenai, Flathead, Priest, Coeur d’Alene,

and Arrow lakes were all scooped out by glaciers

yet another alpine glacier moved down the Yakima River Valley

throughout the Columbia Plateau of Eastern Washington

new channels were cut and old water courses were dammed

innumerable lakes were formed and transformed in shape and size

with the return of warmer climate approximately 14,000 years ago

land warmed and glacial ice sheets began to retreat

continental glaciers retreated to the north

alpine glaciers retreated into higher and higher elevations

scientific evidence exists that as the climate grew warmer

new lakes and saltwater sounds were formed

Lake Washington was free of ice -- 13,500 years ago

floods of water which had been trapped in the glacial ice were released

valleys were flooded by a sea level even higher than that of today

great shallow lakes fed by melt water from the mountains

filled the long trenches gouged out by the glaciers

melting caused floods in the interior on Eastern Washington

retreating Okanogan ice Lobe allowed Columbia River to resume its former course

abandoned channel, now left dry, became known as the Grand Coulee

Columbia River flowed through an area known today as the Channeled Scablands

Columbia Plateau was surrounded by rivers but had few surface streams

today it is composed of a gravel desert of hills and deep canyons

and has an extensive soil-covered area

ridges were separated by wide spaces with deep coulees

floods followed these channels and carried off soil leaving denuded hills

floods followed the line of least resistance deepening first the old channels

then excavating a maze of new channels

Scablands contained interlaced channels of varying depth

That formed a pattern within a pattern

two deep gashes, Moses Coulee and Grand Coulee

led away from the Okanogan ice Lobe which crossed the Columbia River

however, the melting ice cap alone could not supply the amount of water

necessary to cause the effect that resulted

perhaps the bursting of the ice barrier forming Lake Missoula

on the northwest released a sufficient amount of water

EFFECTS OF THE MOST RECENT ICE AGE CAN BE SEEN

Today’s Columbia River flows some 1,200 miles to the Pacific Ocean

it is one of the great rivers of the world draining about 259,000 square miles

Columbia River drainage includes 60,000 square miles of British Columbia in Canada

however, 85% of the river is located below the international boarder

in the state of Washington

Washington, Oregon, all of Montana west of the Continental Divide,

small areas of Nevada, northern Utah and western Wyoming

are drained by the Columbia and its tributaries

source of the Columbia River is Columbia Lake in eastern British Columbia, Canada

it runs between two stunning chains of mountains, the Selkirks in British Columbia

and the Cascades in Washington, Oregon and Northern California

Columbia River reaches its northern-most point at 52º north

where it receives the Canoe River

Columbia then makes a grand turn and runs south into the Arrow Lakes

it soon joins the Kootenay River and its tributaries in British Columbia

entering today’s Washington state, the Columbia River gains the Pend d’Oreille River

flowing from Lake Pend d’Oreille which is fed by Montana’s Clark Fork River

Columbia River is now larger than North America’s Rio Grande

and Colorado rivers and Europe’s Seine and Elbe rivers

Spokane River from northern Idaho joins the Columbia

next the Okanogan River which drains southern British Columbia is added

making the Columbia larger than Asia’s Tigris-Euphrates River

and Europe’s Loire and Don rivers

Yakima River flowing from the Cascade Mountains enters the Columbia

Snake River beginning in Yellowstone Park

flows through Wyoming, Nevada and Idaho

it delivers the waters of several major rivers including the Portneuf, Owyhee,

Malheur, Powder, Grande Ronde, Henrys Fork, Malad, Boise, Payette,

Salmon, Clearwater and Palouse rivers

now the Columbia is larger than Europe’s Po, Dnieper and Rhone rivers

and Africa’s Nile River

Walla Walla River next empties into the Columbia

from Oregon the Columbia River receives the Umatilla River, Willow Creek,

John Day, Deschutes, Hood, Sandy and Willamette rivers

Washington from the north side of the Columbia adds the Klickitat,

White Salmon Lewis, Kalama, Toutle and Cowlitz rivers

making it larger in volume than Europe’s Rhine and Danube rivers,

Africa’s Zambezi River, Asia’s Indus River

and North America’s Fraser and Nelson rivers

EROSION HAS CHANGED THE FACE OF THE EARTH SINCE THE LAST ICE AGE

Erosion by wind and water scarred the Earth’s surface

underground water flowed in deep veins below the surface

this water was heated to the boiling point and dissolved minerals

boiling water escaped the Earth as geysers, or hot pools, or mud springs

springs provided a surface outlet for underground water that ranges in temperature

soil in the Pacific Northwest, largely volcanic dust, remains extraordinarily fertile

CLIMATE HAS REMAINED HOSPITABLE SINCE THE LAST ICE AGE

Long warm periods between Ice Ages indicate climate change has taken place

land dried out over thousands of years -- giant Northwest forests began to be established

Japan Ocean Current bringing warm temperatures has an effect on the Pacific coast

Pacific Northwest is warmer in winter than other regions of the same latitude

on the Atlantic coast or the Mississippi Valley

summer remains cooler than on the Atlantic coast

Cascade Mountains divide the region into a humid western section and a dry eastern section

“Chinook Winds” originally applied to summer winds that blew into the Willamette Valley

from the coast region north of the Columbia River where the Chinook Indians dwell

with usage the meaning was changed to the equatorial trade winds that blow

from the southwest in winter striking the coast from northern California to Alaska

currently Chinook Winds deliver rain west of the Cascades and penetrate to the interior

however, robbed of its moisture, the warm breath of the Chinook Winds

often causes the blanket of snow to disappear from the ground in a few hours

**“LATE QUATERNARY PERIOD”** OF THE CENOZOIC ERA

This final period is also known **as** the “Holocene Epoch” or “Modern Age”

it has existed from about 11,000 years ago

(identified at midnight on our twenty-four clock)

Herds of horses and camels roamed Eastern Washington until they were driven off by cold

mass extinction of large mammals and many birds happened about 10,000 years ago

probably caused by the end of the last Ice Age

Comprehending the unimaginably vast geologic time that existed is impossible

understanding the events that took place is equally imponderable

even with the use of modern scientific equipment

and careful analysis of vast collections of fossils that have been unearthed

Native Americans had access to none of that equipment and information

so legends were proposed to explain the unknowable

CHINOOK INDIANS HAVE THEIR OWN EXPLANATION OF GEOLOGIC TIME

Chinook Indians told of the great monster beaver, Wishpoosh, who inhabited Lake Kichelos[[2]](#footnote-2)

at the summit of the (Cascade)[[3]](#footnote-3) mountains at the source of the (Yakima) river

Wishpoosh was of enormous size and had a ravenous appetite

he was in the habit of seizing and devouring lesser creatures

who came to fish at his lake

and even devoured vegetation to appease his hunger

Wishpoosh became so destructive that Speelyei, (coyote god of the mid-Columbia) region,

attempted to kill the giant beaver

Speelyei went to the lake with his spear tied to his wrist and began to fish

as soon as Wishpoosh saw Speelyei invading his territory the giant beaver attacked

Speelyei threw his spear and struck the giant beaver

who immediately dove to the bottom of the lake dragging Coyote with him

Spellyei and Wishpoosh struggled so mightily they tore out the banks of the lake

floods waters swept down the canyon until the water was dammed up

in greatest lake ever seen located where the Columbia, Yakima and Snake rivers meet

But the struggle between Wishpoosh and Speelyei did not end

as the combatants tugged, ripped and bit at one another, the dam holding the great lake

gave way sending a huge wave down the Columbia River toward the ocean

Wishpoosh and Spellyei tumbled over and over again as they were swept down the river

Coyote god Spellyei grabbed bushes and rocks and trees

to pull himself out of the massive wave

these efforts formed the Columbia Gorge

but Spellyei still could not get out of the wave

Wishpoosh was furious that Spellyei had driven him from his beautiful lake

the giant beaver ate all of the salmon in the river ahead of him to increase his strength

then he swam out to sea with Spellyei in close pursuit

Wishpoosh threw his giant arms around a whale and swallowed it whole

adding to his strength

Spellyei was frightened by the giant beaver’s might

but coyote was the most cunning of animals

he turned himself into a tree branch and drifted among the fish

until Wishpoosh swallowed him

Spellyei turned himself back into his natural form, took out his knife

and cut the insides of the giant beaver -- Wishpoosh gave a great cry and died

Spellyei called on his friend Muskrat who help drag the body of Wishpoosh to shore[[4]](#footnote-4)

coyote and muskrat threw the pieces of Wishpoosh on the land creating tribes of people

Nez Perce were made from the head of Wishpoosh to make them great in council

Cayuse were created from the massive arms of Wishpoosh

so they would be strong and powerful with war clubs and the bow

coyote made the Yakimas from the beaver’s ribs and the Chinooks from the belly

beaver’s legs were used to make the Klickitats so they would be skilled at running

remaining skin and blood were used to make the Snakes (Shoshone)

who thrived on war and blood

Once the tribes were formed Spellyei returned up the Columbia River to rest

but he was so weary that he did not notice the coastal people

had been created without mouths

god Ecahni happened along and fixed the problem by cutting mouths for them

some he made too large and some he made crooked as a joke

this explained why the mouths of the coastal villagers were not quite perfect

Today’s geologic explanation of the natural changes which took place over eons

is hardly less fantastic than the Native American version of geologic events

# PACIFIC NORTHWEST INDIANS

ORIGIN OF NATIVE AMERICAN PEOPLES REMAINS SHROUDED IN MYSTERY

Original homeland of the Native Americans is lost in the distant past

there is even a question if all of these people came from the same original location

In an attempt to fill in the unknown past,Indians developed myths and legends

which they passed through succeeding generations

these stories provided an early foundation

to explain the development of significant characteristics of groups of people

they established a collective identity and related the group’s hierarchy and status

in relation to other people and fundamental resources in their environment

AN OKANOGAN NATIVE LEGEND ADDRESSES THE BEGINNINGS OF PEOPLE

Long ago when the sea was young white giants lived on the land far across the sea

their lives were happy until war came and the giants fought among themselves

Their chief, a woman named Scomalt, drove the fighters to the edge of the land

she broke off the piece where they were standing and pushed it out to sea

this broken piece of island was swept by storms and scorched by the sun

many died until eventually only one man and woman remained alive

Their island began to sink so they built a canoe and paddled onward

after paddling for many days they came to some islands

by this time the couple had lost their whiteness as the sun had burned them red

their descendants became the Okanogan Indians

EVEN IN ANCIENT TIMES VARIETIES OF PEOPLE EXISTED ON NORTH AMERICA

First people to settle in what is today North America

collectively are referred to as Native Americans or Indians

To speak of all Indians as all the same defies reality

Indian groups vary as much as nationalities of other Americans do today

a large variety of native thought and action were the rule rather than the exception

only a few statements can be applied universally to all Indian people

While their origins remain a mystery there are at least seven different types of Indian people:

•*Woods Indians* live between the Atlantic Ocean and the Mississippi River

this region had plentiful rainfall that fed many lakes and streams

forests spread over mountains and valleys

Woods Indians depended on the trees and animals that lived in the forests

in addition to fishing, hunting and gathering

they relied on freshwater and saltwater fish and shellfish

these natives developed a permanently settled farming culture

as native women planted corn, squash, beans, tobacco and gourds

•*Plains Indians* live on rolling plain between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains

there was enough rain for a thick carpet of grass but not enough to grow many trees

Plains Indians were nomads and hunters who followed huge herds

of grazing elk, deer and antelope that fed on the grass

most important of these animals was the bison known locally as buffalo

these animals provided the Indians almost everything they needed

meat supplied food,

skins provided for tepees, boats, utensils, baggage and clothing

seasonal changes required mobility to follow the migrating animals

•*Pueblo Indians* of the Southwest live on high, dry plain crossed by mountains and canyons

what little rain that fell came in the summer and encouraged plants to grow

they build large permanent house-like buildings of adobe (sun-died clay)

snow fell in the mountains in winter and supplied streams, springs and water holes

some Iroquois Indians who lived in this region took up irrigation

•*Seed Gatherers of the Desert* live in an even drier land in the parched basins and plateaus

between the Rockies and the Sierra Nevada Mountains in Southern California

animals were scarce and hunting could not provide an adequate amount of food

families roamed the desert as women gathered berries, nuts, seeds and roots

shelters were simply windbreakers or flimsy huts of rushes or bunch grass

these native women excelled at weaving beautiful water-tight baskets

•*Northern Hunters* live in the Mackenzie-Yukon Valley of Alaska and Canada

they depended on caribou and other northern game for food, shelter and clothing

in winter hunters tracked this game on snowshoes

as their dogs pulled sledges (sleds) carrying their belongings

Inuit Natives still live along the cold northern fringes of North America

from Alaska to Labrador, Canada as well as in Greenland and Siberia

they depended on Arctic birds, seals, whale, walrus, caribou, polar bear

and other animals to provide food and animal skins for warm clothing

they turned the fur toward their skin to hold in the body heat

•*Coastal Indians* live between the Cascade Mountains and the Pacific Ocean

in a region known for heavy rainfall

rivers, streams, lakes and the ocean all were rich in fish, shellfish and mammals

hunters added wild game to the fish supply for variety

native women gathered bulbs, berries, roots and seeds to enhance their diet

dense forests of tall trees grew in abundance

giant red cedar trees were the most significant

Coastal Indian men were skillful wood-carvers

straight-grained cedar wood could be split even with crude tools

skillful Indians built large houses by tying big slabs of cedar to wooden frames

large cedar dugout canoes were constructed for river, lake and even ocean travel

Coastal Indians wore little clothing

women wore fringe skirts and raincoats made from the inner bark of cedar trees

which provided protection against the rain

as the weather turned cold layers of animal fur were added

•*Plateau Indians* live between the Rocky Mountains and the Cascade Mountains

these natives were taller and leaner than the coastal people

Plateau Indians were cousins of the Plains people

they, like their cousins, were nomads and hunters and they also were expert at fishing

NATIVE AMERICAN PHYSICAL FEATURES MAY HAVE CHANGED OVER TIME

Indians were affected physically by influences such as climate, food and modes of living

thus, today Indians do not appear identical to Asian peoples

Race is an attempt to categorize a broad spectrum of skin coloring

and superficial physical features

in the mind of archaeologists race does not exist

tragically in our society today, racism does

THEORIES OF NATIVE ORIGINS EXPLAIN VARIOUS CHARACTERISTICS

One theory, the “Mass Migration Theory” focuses on physical characteristics

shared by Asiatic peoples and Native Americans

similar genetic markers of Eskimos, Aleuts, and some Coastal Indians

have convinced some scientists that most American Natives

descended from a single small band of Mongoloid people

physical features such as medium coarse straight black hair on the head

that when cut in cross sections is cylindrical

also indicate an Asian-Indian relationship

both groups of people also have a scant amount of body hair

brown or black eyes, broad forehead and rectangular, moderately flat faces

and straight narrow noses with a high bridge are common to both groups

both peoples are of short stature

they averaged 5’6” for adult males and 5’1” for females

both display a stocky body build -- adults were thick set and powerful in appearance

distinctive concave shape of their incisor teeth (shovel incisors)

and the lower first molars that has three roots rather than two

link these people genetically

Another set of theories attempts to explain cultural similarities found among isolated people

Native American, Mediterranean, Eastern European, Pacific Island

and North African people share different aspects of similarities

such as language patterns, similar tools and utensils

raft construction and pyramid construction (in Egypt and Central America)

“MASS MIGRATION THEORY”(OR LAND BRIDGE THEORY) IS THE MOST POPULAR

It is thought that during the last Ice Age Central Asian or Mongoloid people

migrated eastward from Siberia across the Bearing Strait to Alaska in different groups

no earlier than 16,000 to 14,000 years ago

perhaps they were following the big game animals they depended on for food

even then the Arctic Steppe (known as taiga in Siberia and tundra in North America)

was a grassy, treeless habitat that stretched from Siberia to Alaska

it was home to a surprising number of animals -- many now extinct

such as mammoths, mastodons, camels, small horses, bears, bison, antelopes,

musk oxen, giant beavers the size of bears,

ground sloths the size of elephants, and saber-tooth cats

they might have migrated from island to island across the Aleutian Islands chain

or crossed a temporary land bridge or ice bridge that spanned the Bering Strait

they may have come in successive waves over thousands of years

in their travels they surely left a trail of litter, bones, broken tools and discarded clothing

but today the trail is cold -- only occasional bones and stone remnants are found intact

One theory of human migration southward involves the existence of a narrow 700-mile-long

ice-free corridor inland between the Continental ice sheets and Puget Sound ice sheets

just east of the Rocky Mountains that might have opened about 13,000 years ago

first Americans may have followed this route to migrate south from the Arctic region

and then followed the Columbia River through the Cascade Mountains

to the Pacific coast

archaeologists have found a great deal of evidence to support this theory

remains of horses, elephants, and other large animals have been discovered

in both Asia and North America that supports the existence of such a land link

Second theory of migration south suggests pockets of ice-free areas

were located on the Pacific coast

rather than striking out overland in the migration south

early people may have dwelt along the saltwater where food was more easily obtained

these gatherer-hunters could have existed quite comfortably

artifacts show humans and other mammals lived along the Alaska coast

during the last Ice Age

following the coastline would be a logical route on the journey south

for boat-using people

IN SOME WAYS NOMADIC MIGRATION APPEARS TO BE COUNTER-INTUITIVE

Theories of a people wandering to North America and south to go against common sense

at the height of the last Ice Age Asian people of Siberia would have moved further north

toward a darker, colder country of the Arctic Steppe

If this is true a natural “cold filter” allowed only the fittest people to enter to North America

they must have known how to sew jackets, trousers and foot gear from animal skins

they probably burned animal fat for heat, cooking, melting snow and light

Big game hunters were thought to be the very first settlers of the Pacific Northwest

they were descendants of Asians who were the most skilled hunters and survivalists

the world has ever known

they had to possess tools, knowledge, skill and courage to kill huge animals

hunting spears probably were very heavy -- used more for jabbing than for throwing

in the treeless environment, spears were probably made from long bones

micro-blade spearheads or arrowheads were found in Russia (August 1996)

similar in design to those found in North America

they used small flakes of stone fastened to bone handles for cutting

Arrival of humans coincided with a series of animal extinctions in North America

two-thirds of the large animals disappeared within 2,000 years of human arrival

but these losses could have been caused by changes in climate ending the Ice Age

VARIOUS OTHER THEORIES AND BELIEFS EXPLAIN CULTURAL SIMILARITIES

*Theory of Atlantis* is found in the writings of the Greek philosopher Plato

over 2,300 years ago he wrote the dialogues *Timaeus* and *Critias*

which was an account of the ancient thriving, wealthy, peaceful island city of Atlantis

Atlantis’ unknown location has been speculated to have been in many places

from Greece and Spain to the Strait of Gibraltar in Europe, to the Middle East,

to the Atlantic’s Azores Islands, to Great Britain and Ireland, Scandinavia,

and both North and South America

Atlantis was said to have disappeared into the Atlantic Ocean

after a day and night of fierce earthquakes and floods

most people consider Plato’s account a story expressing his hatred of war and corruption

people of Atlantis were said to possess advanced skills and knowledge in engineering

if Plato’s descriptions of sophisticated irrigation systems and canals can be believed

and we find the same plants and animals on continents thousands of miles apart

whatever its location (if it existed) Atlantis may have served as a land bridge

also, can it be mere coincidence that several ancient cultures seem to have

spontaneously acquired knowledge and skills that were seemingly

beyond their level of development such as the ability

to build a perfect pyramid and construct oceangoing reed rafts?

*Continental Drift Theory* notes the outlines of Western Africa and South America

appear to fit together like a jig-saw puzzle

some believe at one time North and South America, Europe, Asia and Australia

were all joined

evidence for the movement of continents on “tectonic plates” is now extensive

geologists using modern scientific instruments and techniques have shown:

•North and South America are drifting westward away from Europe and Africa;

•glacial sediments in South America, Africa, Madagascar, Arabia, India, Antarctica

and Australia also offer evidence of continental drift;

•satellite photographs and measurements of magnetism of rocks support this theory

similar plant and animal fossils are found along different continent shores

suggesting that they were once joined

small freshwater crocodile-like reptile fossils are found both in Brazil and South Africa

land reptile fossils in rock of the same age exist in South America, Africa and Antarctica

identical earthworm families are still found in South America and Africa

*Kon-Tiki Theory* was proposed by Norwegian scientist Thor Heyerdahl

he believed people from South America could have settled the Pacific Polynesian islands

such as Samoa, Tonga and the Cook Islands

Heyerdahl organized a 1947 expedition using only the materials and technologies

that were available to ancient people

Heyerdahl and a small team traveled to Peru where they constructed a raft, the *Kon-Tiki,*

using balsa logs and native materials in ways illustrated by Spanish conquistadores

Heyerdahl and five companions sailed the raft for 101 days 4,300 miles across the Pacific

before smashing into a reef in the Tuamotu Islands

they made landfall and all returned safely

if Heyerdahl’s theory is correct South American natives could be linked to people

who inhabit the Pacific islands today

*Lost Tribes of Israel* is the belief that Indians are one of ten lost tribes

according to Hebrew Old Testament Scriptures the profit Jacob had twelve sons

these sons fathered the twelve tribes of Israel (of Jewish belief)

ten of the original twelve tribes of ancient Israel were driven from the Kingdom of Israel

after their conquest by the Assyrians -- 722 BCE (before the Common Era)

several groups of people were thought to be descendants of these “lost” tribes

British preacher Thomas Thorowgood published a book in 1650

in attempting to convert the Indians to Christianity he suspected they might be Jews

he argued they were descendants of one of the Ten Lost Tribes

*Book of Mormon* states a small band of Israelites under Lehi migrated from Jerusalem

to the Western Hemisphere about 600 BCE

during the thousand-year history revealed in the Book of Mormon

descendants of Lehi’s oldest son, Laman, developed darker skins

but after their conversion to Christianity their skin color

ceased to be a distinguishing characteristic

a terrible war occurred about 231CE (Common Era)

Lamanites remained to inhabit North America

present-day Native Americans are believed to be their descendants

*Indigenous Theory* is the least imaginative theory of all

this theory contends Indians are a separate people who always existed on North America

they did not migrate from anywhere

thus there is no relationship that exists between North America Indians

and other cultures

FOSSIL REMAINS PROVIDE INSIGHT INTO THE LIVES OF ANCIENT AMERIANS

Manis mastodon site was unearthed on the Olympic Peninsula near today’s Sequim -- 1977

land owner Emanuel Manis dug up part of a mastodon tusk

while excavating for a swimming pool

Washington State University scientist Carl Gustafson discovered bones

which rested on a raw glacial deposit

this animal died so soon after the last Ice Age had retreated that soil had not formed

the animal, estimated to be forty-five years old, had died of natural causes

it laid on its left side when it died in a pond that dried up over thousands of years

this carcass had been covered with sentiment

this fossil has provided the only archaeological evidence of human hunters

putting a spear into a primitive elephant as a portion of a rib bone

with a piece of bone broken off had a spear point embedded into it

about three-quarters of an inch

this wound did not kill the mastodon

as the rib showed evidence of several months of healing

after it died the beast’s massive skull had been wrenched loose

from the carcass and rotated 180º

bones had scratches on them and the beast is believed to have been cut up by humans

some bones were broken with a spiral fracture

which happens only when a fresh bone is broken

dating of twigs and other vegetation at the site indicated they are about 13,800 years old

indicating North America’s earliest known inhabitants

may have attacked the ancient elephant

however, there remained some doubt that human hunters inflicted the damage

as the tapered bone fragment could be tusk point which had been inflicted in battle

later re-examination (in 2011) using new technology

concluded that Gustafson had been right

CLOVIS CULTURE IS DISCOVERED IN NEW MEXICO

Whatever their route to North America ancient people appear to be relatively peaceful

when compared to the later-developing farming cultures

Arrowheads and bone fragments were discovered by Richey Clovis

near Clovis, New Mexico -- 1932

gracefully tapered quartz micro-blade spear points with a flat base and sharp edges

had been flaked to make a tapered point

this was thought to have been invented by Clovis people some12,000 years ago

Clovis people may have migrated from Asia across the Bearing Strait in different groups

some may have followed the Pacific coastline as far as South America

ancient cave dwelling sites of Clovis people have been found near the Pacific coast

as far south as Chile in South America

PUGET SOUND REGION APPEARS TO HAVE BEEN ACCESSIBLE BY BOAT

Warming of the climate would have allowed boat-using people to reach Puget Sound

conventional thought is that hunting parties arrived by canoe from the north

following the Pacific coastline approximately 12,000 years ago

It is possible that ancient Indians traveling south along an inland ice-free corridor

next followed the Columbia River through the Cascade Mountains to the coast

it is known the middle and lower reaches of the Columbia were ice-free very early

new evidence suggests the northern end of the ice-free corridor remained frozen

between ice sheets

this would suggest it was not possible to cross into the interior until 11,000 years ago

or even more recently

Further archeological effort may provide better evidence of the origins of Native Americans

CLOVIS CULTURE WAS ACTIVE IN WASHINGTON STATE

Clovis people located in the Wenatchee Valley near the Columbia River 11,200 years ago

Moises Aguirre and Mark Mickles uncovered the largest cache of Clovis artifacts

yet found -- 1987

these objects were unearthed while excavating an irrigation ditch for an apple orchard

Scientists frequently visited the site and discovered many objects

such as flaked stone micro blades, bone fragments and tools for hunting and killing

these bone and stone artifacts include milky gray translucent points of chalcedony quartz

several of these are among the most beautiful examples of Clovis points yet discovered

MARMES MAN ROCK SHELTER HOUSES ANCIENT NATIVE PEOPLE

“Marmes Rock Shelter” is the oldest well-documented archeological site in the Northwest

this site had been inhabited between 11,000 and 8,000 years ago

Marmes Rock Shelter is the location of cremated human remains -- discovered in 1968

when the bones of eight people ranging in age from eight to twenty-five were found

these were modern looking people -- virtually indistinguishable from people today

they had a fairly short life expectancy -- forty years old would be considered old

also discovered was a slender stone needle that indicates people living in the rock shelter

could have made fitted clothing

Although the archeological site was so remarkable the site was listed

as a National Historic Landmark

(along with Chinook Point and American and English Camps on San Juan Island)

yet, congress failed to pass funding to preserve the site

although construction of Lower Monumental Dam on the Snake River

would inevitably flood the site

President Lyndon Johnson issued an Executive Order

that allowed the Army Corps of Engineers to build a levee around the site

when the dam was closed Marmes Rock Shelter was covered with water

within three days due to the seepage of thick layers of gravel

that had not been taken into consideration

OLDEST CLOVIS-AGE SKELETON IN THE NORTHWEST IS DISCOVERED

An almost complete skeleton belonging to what became known as “Buhl Woman”

was excavated from a gravel pit near Buhl, Idaho -- 1992

“Buhla”as she was named, was approximately seventeen to twenty-one years old

she was five foot two inches tall and in generally good health

how she died is unknown

Buhla ate primarily bison and elk and occasionally salmon and other fish

Buhla’s right cheek lay atop a new pressure-flaked, pointed obsidian tool

its position seems to indicate it may have been a grave offering

also found were fragments of what could be an awl or pin and a broken bone needle

along with a cut or engraved badger bone

Radio-carbon dating identified her as approximately 10,700 years old

this is one of the oldest sets of human remains found in the Americas

Buhla’s remains were returned to the Shoshone-Bannock Tribes at Fort Hall -- 1992

she was reburied by the tribe -- 1993

Other Clovis artifacts such as tools and knives also were identified in caves in Idaho

as were fossils of blood from bison, deer, rabbits and humans

how this culture eventually was destroyed remains a mystery

BRITISH COLUMBIA WAS THE CROSSROADS OF SEVERAL ANCIENT CULTURES

Climate heating and cooling led to sea level fluctuations as the coastline moved in and out

ancient native campsites may now be found below sea level or high into the mountains

No evidence has been found to indicate the earliest people on the coast had boats

but the Queen Charlotte Islands were inhabited more than 10,000 years ago

also, fossils indicate people lived along the mainland fishing and killing seals by that time

Studying modern cultures living in similar circumstances provides insight into these people

ancient people probably framed winter homes with reindeer antlers, mammoth bones

and tusks covered with animal skins

they may have erected these shelters over shallow pits

with earth heaped up around the outside for insulation

summer habitat was more portable to enhance the following of migrating game

there is no known evidence of large permanent houses

probably due to rising sea levels along this unstable shore line

Today’s Namu on British Columbia’s mainland in the vicinity of the Queen Charlotte Islands

is one of the oldest archeological sites on the British Columbia coast

marine hunters lived here from 10,000 years ago to about the year 580 CE

these people left a trail of cutting and piercing tools, micro-blades and polished stones

made of materials found in the region such as antlers, bone and rocks

large variety of tools indicated different tool-making cultures met in this area

no micro-blades have been found immediately south of Namu

PETROGLYPHS AND PICTOGRAPHS GIVE GLIMPSES INTO THE DISTANT PAST

Native Americans had no written language, but Indians nonetheless left records of their lives

symbols have been found at ancient sites in Washington State

although the significance of the artwork remains unknown

these may express religious ideas or record legends for following generations

Petroglyphs are carvings of designs and figures scratched on stone cliffs

in (today’s Washington) most are found in smooth cliffs overlooking the Columbia River

common designs include: owl, lizard, four-pointed star, coyote, mountain sheep and elk

other important animals are also often pictured

most spectacular petroglyph is “She-Who-Watches” located near Wishram, Washington

in the vicinity of the historic location of Celilo Falls which is now covered

by the lake behind The Dalles Dam on the Columbia River

meanings of some of the petroglyph symbols have been explained to some extent:

•*Coyote Face* -- found where the river is very dangerous;

*•Eagle or Spear Fish Bird* -- carry prayers to the Creator;

*•Elk* -- assures increased power for a successful hunt;

*•Four-pointed Star* -- common symbol referring to astronomy;

•*Goats* -- most common of the animals -- symbolize power to ensure a good hunt;

•*Medicine Man* -- Shaman figure shows control of the Spirit World;

*•Owl* -- symbolizes use of the surrounding property but not ownership;

•*Owl with power rays* -- spiritual power which conveys prayers;

*•Two people together* -- chief and common people share the river;

*•Tsagagalalal (or She-Who-Watches)* -- chief who was changed into a rock

but saw everything

*•Water Devils* -- mark where river is dangerous and provide protection

Pictographs are ancient Indians drawings placed on rock faces

many drawings of the sun, moon, stars and figures resembling peace signs can be seen

sadly, a large number of historically significant pictograph sites

have been covered by landfills and garbage dumps

nine Indian villages and their accompanying drawings

were buried at the mouth of the Washougal River to meet the demands of modern life

Why cliff carvings and drawings found in Eastern Siberia and South Pacific Islands

are remarkably similar to drawings found along the Columbia River remains unknown

unfortunately, hundreds of petroglyphs and pictographs that could help answer riddle

were covered by water locked behind The Dalles, John Day and Bonneville dams

and have been destroyed

Modern technology can provide a means for archaeologists to glimpse into the ancient past

but technology is a dual-edged sword when it comes to understanding ancient cultures

it also has slowed our comprehension of the ancient world by destroying ancient sites

OTHER PARTIAL HUMAN REMAINS HAVE BEEN DISCOVERED IN THE NORTHWEST

Three vertebrae, a jawbone, and a pelvic bone that had been gnawed by a carnivore

were found on Prince of Wales Island, Southern Alaska -- July 4, 1996

they were dated at about 9,730 years ago -- not as old as the Clovis culture

Today about 2,000 human remains are being held in museums

they can be useful in analyzing diet, famine, diseases, physical activities

and can reveal genetic relationships

More and more scientific evidence shows that earlier Native American populations

appeared to share some features with Caucasians

Indians could perhaps be as closely related to Europeans as they are to Asians

SALMON PROVIDED AN ABUNDANCE OF FOOD FOR THE EARLY PEOPLE

Salmon five to six pounds each, probably sockeye, was abundant, reliable as a food source

and could be cured and stored for use in the winter

Good fishing places became centers of trade

salmon bones were found with human tools at Kettle Falls -- 9,600 to 8,900 years old

salmon bones were found at the mouth of the Fraser River -- 8,000 years old

ancient salmon bones also have been located in Stevens County, Washington

and at The Dalles, Oregon

KENNEWICK MAN SKELETON IS DISCOVERED BY ACCIDENT

“Kennewick Man” is the name for one of the oldest, most complete ancient skeletons found

bone tests have shown the remains to be more than 8,400-year-old

Will Thomas and Dave Deacy from nearby West Richland

attended the annual Columbia River hydroplane races

wading at the edge of the river at Columbia Park they stumbled across the skull

they picked up the skull and hid it in some bushes until after the race -- July 28, 1996

they notified the Benton County sheriff's office who informed the Kennewick police

police inspected the scene and noticed more bones in the shallow water

leaving the bones where they were, police contacted the county coroner’s office

who asked forensic anthropologist and archaeologist Dr. James Chatters

to investigate

after ten visits to the sight Chatters managed to collect 350 bones and pieces of bone

producing the skull and an almost complete skeleton

many of his bones were broken into several pieces

Kennewick Man was determined to be five feet seven to five feet nine inches tall

between forty and fifty-five years old and slender

he had a long narrow skull, a projecting nose, receding cheekbones and a high chin

a stone projectile was found lodged in the man’s hip bone which had healed over

Kennewick Man became the subject of an eight-year-long lawsuit beginning in 1996

between the federal government along with several Native American tribes and scholars

although the court case was resolved in 2004, the debate continues today

as of April 19, 2004, the 9th U.S. Circuit Court of Appeals upheld an earlier decision

by U.S. District Court Judge Jelderks that the remains could not be defined

as “Native American” under federal law

Kennewick Man remains are still under the control of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

and scientific study of the remains was allowed to take place

Kennewick Man is now at the Burke Museum at the University of Washington

NATIVE CULTURE WAS DIVIDED BY THE CASCADE MOUNTAINS

Cascade Mountains were active volcanoes -- several mountains still continue to emit steam

Mount Saint Helens violently erupted May 18, 1980

Mount Rainier and other high Cascade Mountains had glaciers and snowfields

these, along with the rain forests, ensured Western Washington was interlaced

with rivers, streams and creeks of all sizes

fed in the in the summer by melting snows

and, in the fall and winter, by the incessant rains from the Pacific Ocean

Cascades also separated Eastern Washington from rain-carrying Pacific Ocean winds

which resulted in an arid climate that was hot in summer and cold in winter

with a far shorter growing season than along the Pacific coast

Cascades separated Washington’s Native Americans of into “Coastal” and “Plateau” people

both Coastal and Plateau cultures existed along the water’s edge as food was abundant

natives avoided the mountains, Western Washington’s deep rain forests

and Eastern Washington’s desert land which served as barriers

“Coastal (canoe) Indians” resided in Western Washington on the west side of the Cascades

areas of habitation occupied by coast natives included a narrow strip of land

running north and south from the southern tip of Alaska to southern border of Oregon

a distance of about 1,500 miles

Pacific Ocean formed the western boundary of the region

and the Cascade Mountains formed the Eastern edge

this area was not more than one hundred miles wide and much narrower in some places

seldom did the coastal people wander inland more than five miles from their villages

due to the warm flow of ocean air associated with the Japanese Current

this land is blessed with a moderately warm though rainy climate

which experiences only modest seasonal variation

some coastal rain forests receive as much as 160 inches of moisture per year

(more than thirteen feet of rain annually)

though some areas such as the Olympic Rain shadow (near today’s Sequim)

received less than twenty inches per year

Coastal native culture centered on fish and water

living near the Pacific Ocean, Puget Sound and along rivers

fishing and gathering were the basis of life for these people

“Plateau (horse) Indians” resided east of the Cascade Mountains in Eastern Washington

in the area between the Cascades and the Rocky Mountains

the region is often referred to as the “Inland Empire” or “Columbia Plateau”

this region rises from one- to five-thousand feet above sea level

and is marked by mountains, hills, plateaus and basins

at various geologic times the region was subjected to enormous lava flows

which today form the basis of surface soil along with sediments and volcanic ash

climate is dry and sunny and extremes of hot and cold are more pronounced

snow is frequent in winter and conifer trees blanket most mountain areas

Columbia River drains a vast region before emptying into the Pacific Ocean

Plateau Indians lived a more nomadic life in the interior of today’s Northwest states

they usually traveled from place to place on foot

(and on horseback after these animals were introduced)

large dogs served some tribes as pack animals

they carried goods in small rawhide-covered panniers slung over their backs

in addition to walking rivers and lakes could often provide transportation links

in winter, walking on snowshoes was an important mode of transportation

as on the west side of the Cascade Mountains, Plateau Indians avoided the woods

because they were filled with unknown spirits

Plateau native culture depended on meat and fish for food

these people fished, hunted large and small game and gathered available foods

LANGUAGES DEVELOPED ON BOTH SIDES OF THE CASCADE MOUNTAINS

Washington State natives represented at least thirty principal language groupings

most belonging to one of two principal “root languages:” “Sallyshan” and “Shakaption”

Sallyshan is further sub-divided into “Coastal Salish” and “Interior Salish”

Coastal Salish is the basis of language and dialects of Western Washington

spoken between Puget Sound and Cascade Mountains

including Lummi, Nooksack, Samish, Snohomish, Puyallup, Nisqually and others

Interior Salish is the principal language stock of the Plateau Indians of Eastern Washington

spoken in Northeast quarter of Washington

and beyond between the Cascades and the Rocky Mountains

by such people as Okanogans, San Poils, Spokanes, Colvilles, Pend O’reilles,

Flatheads and Coeur d’Alene Indians of Northern Idaho and Western Montana

many dialects were developed among Plateau people

but probably a lesser number of languages than on the coast

Shakaption was spoken by people who lived south of the Interior Salish speaking people

they ranged through Southeast Washington from the Cascades to the Rocky Mountains

this root language was spoken by natives such as Yakimas, Umatilla, Walla Walla,

Palouse and Nez Perce

Villages and tribes within a language group spoke a common tongue which unified them

although there were wide variations because communication from village to village

seldom was necessary outside of social events

each society spoke a dialect of their own making communications very difficult

quite often villages which communicated to some degree also intermarried

and usually shared the same territory

Several villages spoke a unique language of their own independent from the root languages

Chimakuan was spoken on the Northern Olympic Peninsula

these people included Makah, Chimakum, Quinault and Queets natives

Waiilatupan spoken only by Cayuse Indians in sections around present-day Walla Walla

Chinook was spoken along North bank of Columbia River

from the mouth of the river thorough the Cascade Mountains

An exception to this village language isolation took place along the Columbia River

where many villages gathered to fish salmon for their winter food supply

hundreds of Indians gathered at Wishram on the Columbia River to fish for salmon

some trade took place there during these expeditions

prehistoric natives traded skins for meat, roots, roots for fish, arrowheads for canoes,

stone implements for baskets and slaves for shell money

acting as middlemen in the trade between Coastal and Plateau people

Chinook Indians became rich and powerful

Indians needed a common language to conduct trade and ceremonies

“Chinook Jargon,” a combination of tribal dialects built chiefly from the languages

of the Chinook, Nootka, and Salish people, developed as a trade language

for people on both sides of the Cascade Mountains

later regular Pow-Wows (gatherings) were held in the Yakima Valley and at Kettle Falls

where Indians traded horses, danced and gambled

As should be anticipated, languages reflected the natives’ thought processes

for example, the native concept of“time” was divided into large units of measurement

a month “moon” and a day “sun”

hours, minutes, seconds, etc. had no meaning to the Native Americans

also the large variety of names for fish and fishing methods

reflected the importance of this food for the natives

Native Americans named significant locations and geographic features

Chemeketa (today’s Salem, Oregon) meant “Here we Rest” or “Place of Peace”

as it was a council ground of the Willamette Valley Indians

Multnomah (Portland, Oregon) identified “Down the River”

Umatilla, Oregon commemorated “The Wind-blown Sand”

Chelan, Washington identified “Beautiful Water”

Walla Walla, Washington indicated “Where the Waters Meet”

Spokane, Washington designated “The People of the Sun”

Snoqualmie, Washington recognized “The Falls of the Moon God”

INDIANS BELIEVED IN THE SPIRIT WORLD

Native Americans believed they were always surrounded by supernatural beings or“spirits”

they practiced simple forms of nature worship today called “Animism”

they believed that things in nature, e.g. trees, mountains, and the sky,

have spirits or consciousness

and that a supernatural animate (living) force organizes the universe

animals and plants each have a spirit as do inanimate objects or phenomena

rocks, the weather, or the sky also were living beings with their own spirits

everything has a spirit

they also believed people have a personal spirit -- or, in modern terms, a soul

that can and did exist separately from the body

Spirits have the ability to interfere with the natural world

this conviction was so fundamental to Indians they did not have a word for their belief

NATIVE AMERICAN’S GOD WAS FEMINIE

Native Americans thought of themselves as coming out of the earth, that is, the mother

Indians’ God was a shadowy external power that pervaded the world

She was known by various names: “The Changer,” “The Great Spirit”

and “Earth Mother”

She might be revealed in a robin’s song, flash of lightening, beautiful scene, or revelation

She was neither all-knowing nor all-good

sometimes The Changer was foolish and selfish -- but She was always all powerful

Although ancestors and future descendants had access to the land and its many resources

The Changer was the real owner -- She allowed people to use the land

nothing must be done to hurt the earth or anger the spirits

NATIVE AMERICAN LEGENDS EXPLAINED THE EXISTANCE OF THE SPIRIT WORLD

“In the early time” the world was filled with great monsters which had magical powers

these monsters moved about and talked much as animals do today

these magical monsters possessed a personal spirit which controlled their destiny

“The Changer” transformed the ancient magical monsters into the animals, trees, rocks, lakes

and all of the other forms seen today

however, the ancient monsters kept their personal spirit

all things in nature were the embodiment of spirits -- “everything has a spirit”

these new creatures from The Changer were to be used by people for food and shelter

Indians believed all animals had agreed to die and to be eaten

they thought of people as cannibals

living on the bodies of their brothers and sisters: the fish and the game

humans had only to respect the spirits of the creatures

and return their own bodies at death to the Mother Earth to complete the cycle of life

Coastal and Plateau people believed spirits could both help and hurt humans

spirits could be good or evil depending on the person’s attitude toward the spirit

if the spirit was treated correctly and with proper respect

it would be beneficial to that person

if the spirit felt abused or slighted it would become an evil spirit for that person

RITUALS WERE EXTREMELY IMPORTANT TO NATIVE AMERICANS

Ancient Indians had a time-honored moral code recorded in their myths and legends

it has been said that Chief Seattle (1786-1866) was one of the last spokesmen

for this Paleolithic moral order

Modern society provides no rituals for young people today

so young people are forced to make up their own rituals

often in gangs and initiation rites

some believe all children need the structure of ritual to function rationally in the world

rather than being forced to establish their own morality

perhaps there may be so much violence in American society today

because there are no myths to help young men and women relate to the world

or to understand the world beyond that which is seen[[5]](#footnote-5)

Rituals to honor the Spirit World were very specific and definite

as the natives had no written language these were passed orally to the next generation

Northwest Indians share their spiritual beliefs and customs through stories, songs and dances

to not follow the procedure properly was unthinkable as the salmon and animals

could choose not to return and the people would starve

ABOVE EVERYTHING ELSE THE SPIRIT OF THE SALMON WAS MOST IMPORTANT

Salmon was not the only food of the people although it was the major item on the menu

Salmon, like all living creatures, agreed to die and be eaten -- they became the food staple

however, the spirit of the salmon must be respected to continue to receive this benefit

at any time, salmon (or anything else) could decide humans were not worthy

rites were necessary to avoid offending to the Salmon Spirit

Chief among native rituals was the “Salmon Ceremony”

whose religious nature was well defined

to assure the salmon would not become insulted and refuse to return to the villagers

First fish of the salmon run to be caught carried the Salmon Spirit

it became the center of the salmon ceremony varying only slightly from village to village

when caught this salmon was gently but firmly held by the tail by the fisherman

before being gently put back into the river and held facing upstream

sometimes the fisherman’s thumb and forefinger were placed in the fish’s gills

this fish was to convey to the others of its species who followed

that this was the place where the Salmon Spirit was honored

Fisherman who caught the first salmon invited the entire village to a feast

only fern leaves were used to clean the first salmon -- water was unacceptable to the spirit

this fish was cut lengthwise, not crosswise, using a stone or mussel knife

while the usual method of preparing salmon was by poaching in a wooden cedar box,

or smoked, that was unacceptable to the spirit of the first salmon

this fish was barbecued on a stake beside the fire to allow the spirit of the salmon

to rise with the smoke to a height where the spirit could observe

the thankfulness of the people

spirit salmon was broken into tiny pieces by hand which were given to all of the villagers

this salmon had to be completely eaten before sunset

so the Salmon Spirit could return home

but the host did not eat any of the first catch

Properly disposing of the salmon’s carcass and entrails ensured the spirit was not offended

heart of the fish had to be burned in the campfire

all of the bones and innards were saved intact

in a torchlight procession accompanied by dancing, chanting and singing

natives proceeded to the river where they placed the remains of the spirit salmon

into the stream with his head pointing upstream, symbolizing a spawning salmon

so the run of salmon would return a thousand fold

This covenant also existed between the human world and the animal world

an animal gave its life willingly with the understanding that its spirit would be respected

similar, if less significant ceremonies, were carried out for the first deer, first bird, etc.

unused portions of the body must be returned to the soil or to the ocean

as a “return to Mother Earth”

Even when white traders and trappers came into the region

Indians refused to sell the “Spirit Salmon” to them

for fear they would unknowingly clean the fish by cutting crosswise

or would boil the fish rather than barbeque it and displease the spirit of the salmon

EACH INDIAN WAS BORN WITH A PERSONAL SPIRIT (SOUL)

Every Indian had a Personal Spirit (or soul) which existed in the person’s head

Personal Spirits could and did leave the body and travel around the world exploring

these spirits could choose to seek new discoveries and insights

at other times the Personal Spirit could be stolen by an enemy

when this occurred, the native lost the zest for life

they became apathetic and listless

lost souls became ghosts which could become evil spirits

EACH NATIVE SEARCHED FOR HIS OR HER GUARDIAN SPIRIT OR SPIRITS

In addition to the Personal Spirit two kinds of spirits existed for people to acquire:

•the “Guardian Spirit”protected the individual from harm

it also provided a person with some basic skill such as basket-weaving, fishing,

hunting, berry-picking, carving, house construction or canoe building, etc.

and brought good luck in the acquisition of wealth and thus higher social rank

•the “Shaman’s Spirit” brought power over the Spirit World and the ability to cure illness

Shamans could be either mean or women who possessed supernatural powers

however, they were most often men

During childhood old people told youngsters about various guardian spirits

so the child would recognize them when they were encountered

during the early teen years both boys and girls could engage in a “Spirit Quest”

even slaves were sent out to find their Guardian Spirit

Powerful spirits to people of high rank or to those who could endure the trials necessary

those who were strong enough and could fast (not eat) long enough

and endure many hardships might acquire a strong Guardian Spirit

and be elevated to high social rank even if they had been born into a lower rank

On the Pacific coast, any spirit was acceptable to serves as Guardian Spirit

young person may receive the spirit of an eagle, salmon, or cedar, or a rock, or a lake, etc.

everything has a spirit and may provide protection and good luck

For the Plateau Indians only animal spirits were acceptable as Guardian Spirits

IT WAS DIFFICULT TO ACQUIRE THE SHAMAN’S SPIRIT

It was possible to acquire both a Guardian Spirit and a Shaman’s Spirit at the same time

but normally the Shaman’s Spirit was found later in life -- or never

unlike the Guardian Spirit, the Shaman’s Spirit did not leave the individual

Office of Shaman was often hereditary but that alone was insufficient to justify the position

people quested after the Shaman’s Spirit just as they searched for Guardian Spirits

an ambitious person from a poor family might try to acquire the power of a Shaman

but a special sign was necessary during the Spirit Quest or a quest later in life

that demonstrated a special favor of nature had been extended to that person

Shaman’s Spirit conferred special authority on the recipient

Occasionally the spirit that was anticipated would not be found

for instance, an initiate seeking Shaman’s Spirit might bring back a layman’s spirit

or he or she might bring home a Shaman’s Spirit even if their family members

had been warriors of a lower class rather than Shamans

or no spirit at all might be found during the quest

“seeker”could perhaps acquire a Shaman’s Spirit after acquiring several Guardian Spirits

It was dangerous to acquire the Shaman’s Spirit and the trials varied

for example, to obtain a great spirit a seeker might dive into deep water

perhaps the seeker would float down river on two logs while carrying a heavy stone

he or she would dive into deep water carrying the great weight

sometimes the seeker passed into unconsciousness and floated to the surface

he or she would awaken on the bank of the river or the shore of Puget Sound

having made contact with the Spirit World and acquired a Shaman’s Spirit

Indians who acquired the Shaman’s Spirit did not immediately attempt to use their powers

rather they would test their newly acquired spirit by assisting a practicing Shaman

only rarely would a seeker immediately reveal he or she believed

they were prepared to begin a practice as a Shaman

many years of training were needed to gain the necessary skills to be successful

it was not usual for an Indian to wait until after six or more spirits had been acquired

after years of practice in curing as an assistant to another Shaman

he or she would be recognized as a Shaman and move above their present lot in life

Shaman’s Spirit was so powerful that the seeker could never tell anyone

all that had happened when the spirit was acquired during the spirit quest

not even parents or friends were informed of the complete experience

if the entire experience was revealed, another Shaman might poison the seeker

Shaman could never become a village head chief, but could present an opinion at meetings

normally the Shaman exerted a more powerful influence than even the head chief

A CEREMONY ANNOUNCED THE ACQUISITION OF THE SHAMAN’S SPIRIT

After years of learning the skills required of a Shaman an Indian at age forty or fifty might

arranged a ceremonial feast where as many guests as could be afforded were invited

to announced he or she had achieved the status of Shaman

Many natives contented themselves with the ceremony alone

they never actually practiced as a Shaman

Each Coastal village usually had as many as three practicing Shamans

Plateau Shamans were fewer in number and were not thought to be especially powerful

SHAMANS COULD INFLUENCE THE SPIRIT WORLD

Human connection with the Spirit World was maintained by Shamans

shamanism required specialised knowledge or abilities

rather than information known to everyone

Shamans acquired their supernatural powers from significant dreams, trances and visions

especially following fasting and meditation

however, Shamans were not religious leaders or the clergy

members of the clergy are church officials who have studied to serve the community

rather, a Shaman is like a guide who has a personal experience with the Spirit World

someone who has been somewhere I have not and explains it to me

Shamans were the village’s most powerful people because of their training and personality

Shamans could make contact with the Spirit World

Shamans could show their power by making a stone or a belt or other inanimate object

turn into a snake which moved about

Shamans used a variety of techniques to enter into trance states

while in a trance his or her spirit could travel into the sky, under the earth or into the sea

during their trance Shamans were often assisted by the spirit of an animal guide

while in a trance Shaman are able to contact The Changer, Guardian Spirits

or the world of the dead and use their ability to influence the spirit world

Shamans maintain a special relationship with the worlds and beings they visited

but when in a trance state facilitating communication between the worlds

they could become possessed by supernatural beings

SHAMANS HAD THE POWER TO CURE MENTAL ILLNESSES

Shamans are healers, storytellers, counselors and religious practitioners

they restored the patient to complete health through communication with the Spirit World

unless the spiritual ailment was cured the physical disease would never heal

Shamans believed there were two common causes of illness:

•intervention by the Spirit World;

•loss of the person’s personal spirit (soul)

Shamans used rattles to summons up powers from the Spirit World

then they went into a trance to communicate directly with the spirits

when the Shaman awoke, the patient’s family was told what had been learned

so the family could assist the patient to remain in a healthy state

Indians believed an enemy could entice evil spirits from the Spirit World

to harm or kill a person

by inserting psychic darts and chords into the victim’s Personal Spirit (soul)

this would result in pain where no wound existed

Indians believed part or all of a person’s soul could be lost through emotional

or physical trauma caused by accidents, surgery, childhood abuse, war,

being in a natural disaster, divorce, or the death of a loved one

soul-loss could result in severe and chronic illness, abusive behavior, mental illness,

depression, addictions, grief, coma, or a series of misfortunes

soul-loss also could prevent the sufferer from forming healthy relationships,

or develop a sense that something was missing from the victim’s life

loss of the soul also diminished a person’s physical power

Shamans had a variety of treatments they could administer to their patients:

•“Dream interpretation” was used to gain insight into the nature of the patient’s illness

Shamans listened to the client’s dreams -- sometimes for several days

when the dreams were fully understood the Shaman would have the same dreams

and resolve the conflict to the benefit of the dreamer

this was difficult and required rigorous training on the part of the Shaman

•“Soul extraction” could be performed by a Shaman with the help of friendly spirit guides

to remove the darts and chords and the poison inflicted on the patient’s spirit

using a hollow bird bone, the Shaman would suck or pull the poison

out of the patient’s body

knives, a red-hot iron, or a bow and arrow would be used to scare the evil spirit

or the reflected light of a mirror could blind the malicious spirit

Shaman might temporarily absorb the evil spirit into his or her own body

to keep it from jumping into another person

•“Soul retrieval” could be performed by the Shaman with the help of friendly spirit guides

an effort was made to retrieve pieces of the patient’s lost soul

or, if needed, the whole soul

this required a journey to the Spirit World to request the support of spirits, ancestors

and guides who would assist the Shaman

Soul retrieval was the most dangerous work of Shamans because they have to travel

for long distances outside of their bodies

they were vulnerable to attack by evil spirits and the loss of their own soul

some healings actually involved spiritual warfare as the Shaman struggled violently

to subdue or drive away the evil spirit -- occasionally even weapons were necessary

these cases were so difficult the Shaman would have to be aided

by a series of helpful spirits, ancestors and guides

SHAMANS TREATED DIFFICULT CASES OF PHYSICAL ILLNESS

Shamans are not doctors

doctors practice medicine -- the treatment of the symptoms of sickness and disease

Shamans spent their entire careers discovering and recording the curative powers of plants

they learned about the healing powers of herbs by watching sick animals

Treatments of sickness were within the powers granted to Shaman

each Shaman possessed a “Medicine Bundle” with tools made of things from nature

including furs, skins, bone, crystals, shells, roots and feathers -- tools that were sacred

feathers carried messages to The Changer -- eagle feathers were especially powerful

herbal remedies were gathered from the local environment

and sometimes were traded over long distances

cedar berries and leaves were boiled and then drunk for coughs

cedar was burned and inhaled to treat head colds

Shaman were successful in their treatments of physical illnesses and mental illnesses

as they played an important but risky part in healing others

In addition to curing the sick, the Shaman’s role was:

•to bless the harvests of fish, animals, fruits, roots and berries, etc.

•to protect against hazardous enterprises such as hunting expeditions or a long journey,

•to find lost objects, attack enemies, influence the weather, and so forth

SHAMANS ALSO HELPED THE DECEASED TO REACH THE LAND OF THE DEAD

Shamans also could help complete unresolved business between the living and the dead

and help to give peace or healing to suffering ancestors in the land of the dead

Shamans could bar a ghost from a dwelling by blowing smoke from his pipe to chase it away

Occasionally, the dead could have a difficult time crossing over

to the comfortable and peaceful land of the dead

especially from places where accidents or disasters occurred

SHAMANS SPECIALIZED IN THEIR TREATMENTS

Not every Coastal Shaman was a healer of the spirit and of the body

some were communicators with the Spirit World and soul retrievers, or soul extractors,

some were dream interpreters and others were herbal healers

however, the method of the healer was less important than the service that was performed

Plateau Shamans usually specialized in treating the physically sick

although some faith healing was done

EVIL SHAMAN COULD INFLICT AN EVIL SPIRIT ON THEIR VICTIM

Shamans were generally thought of as healers, yet they also could be feared or mistrusted

even by their own villagers because of their supernatural capabilities

it was thought Shaman sometimes attempted to create business

by injecting an evil spirit into people

if many patients died the Shaman would be killed as a sorcerer

as an evil Shaman was far too dangerous to be allowed to live in the village

Shaman themselves could become ill only through the influences of another Shaman

this could lead to an ongoing war between the local clan’s Shaman

and the enemy clan’s Shaman

spiritual battles lasted for days or months and could result in death for a weaker Shaman

Shamans who routinely aggressively attack other people could lose their ability to heal

and even their status within the community -- sometimes they were even killed

SHAMAN COULD REFUSE TO PROVIDE TREATMENT

Shaman usually announced the price for their services before beginning treatment

and payment was made before treatment was begun

this payment was required to be returned if the procedure was unsuccessful

It was possible a Shaman would refuse treatment if the cure was in doubt

or if a Shaman felt he or she did not have enough spiritual power to cure the patient

the family would be told to contact another, more powerful, Shaman

on occasions when the treatment was not successful the Shaman came under suspicion

family members of the sick person or even the patient might invite several Shamans

sometimes a well-known Shaman from another village would be contacted

Discretion led the Shaman, when there was no hope, to hastily retire

if the patient died during treatment, family members could take revenge on the Shaman

Shamans sometimes went into hiding until the relatives recovered from their grief

however, the fact that Shaman often became very rich speaks to their success

WOMEN SHAMANS HELD THE SAME AUTHORITY AS MEN SHAMANS

Ronald L. Olson spent time studying the Quinault people

he told the story of a young woman who had decided to become a medicine woman

**“She went into the mountains alone and fasted for ten days. Every day she worked at gathering tree limbs and branches until she had collected a huge pile of wood. On the tenth night she set fire to the wood and sat down to wait. As the leaping flames began to engulf more and more of the logs and give off intense heat, the young woman heard a mournful howl which came from a nearby mountain. When she looked toward the peak it seemed to sway. The cry came closer and the fire grew hotter. When she moved away from the burning wood a huge animal something like a wildcat appeared to her. The animal had a sharp nose, and its face was so long that it dragged on the ground. Approaching the fire, the animal raised its head and howled. The young woman was afraid and told the animal, ‘I don’t want that kind (of power). I don’t want you for a guardian spirit.’ The strange animal retreated, but soon the water of the nearby lake began hissing and boiling up, and many kinds of animals came swimming toward her. She was so frightened that she lost consciousness and had a vision in which the animals brought her five kinds of spirits to choose form. She grabbed at the spirit which could bring back lost souls.**

**Curing illness by means of recapture of the soul was a common and spectacular treatment among the Quinault. When a person’s illness was not a simple pain or an obvious physical injury, it was believed that the patient was suffering from loss of his or her soul. Souls reportedly traveled along the road to the dead at different speeds, those of severely ill persons traveling faster than those of people who were less sick. To find and bring back a soul on the road to the land of the dead, a medicine woman had to have a spirit who was familiar with the road.**

**When a medicine woman was attempting to cure she lay down on a mat spread on the floor and sang a sound she had learned in her vision until the spirit entered her body and she went into a trance. The young woman in the story above had been given some crystals in her vision, so whenever she entered a trance she clutched a crystal in each hand. When she spoke it was the spirit speaking through her. As she and the spirit progressed along the road toward the land of the dead, searching for the lost soul, the spirit voice described the various places they were passing including any evidence of the soul’s having passed that way. Sometimes a search might last two days and two nights, depending on how far the soul had gone.**

**If the soul had gone beyond the reach of the medicine woman and her guide, she reported failure, but if she managed to overtake the lost soul, she captured it in her cupped hands. When she had made the return journey and recovered sufficiently from her trance, she poured the soul back into the patient through the top of the head. The pouring motions were repeated several times and were sometimes accompanied by gentle massage.”[[6]](#footnote-6)**

Among the services performed by Shamans for the public good was control of the weather

this story is told about a Salish woman Shaman, **“One winter the weather was so severe that all the livestock were dying of the cold. The snow was so deep that they could not find any grass to eat. So the people sought the aid of an old woman who had power over the weather. She sang her power song and then asked her petitioners to cut a gash in her head. As soon as her blood had fallen on the snow, a south wind began to gather force and soon blew in rain clouds. Rain soon fell and washed away the snow. All the people who owned livestock were grateful to the Shaman for saving their stock, and they all contributed to pay her fee.”[[7]](#footnote-7)**

COASTAL PEOPLE DEVELOPED CULTURES REFLECTING THEIR GEOGRAPHY

Natural ruggedness of the coastal terrain promoted the development of unique societies

Canada’s Tlingit Indians formed the northernmost group of Coastal natives

Coastal people inhabited the area of Washington State south of the Tlingit people

Cape Flattery was home to the Makah Indians

while south of them living along various rivers

were the Hoh, Quileute, Queets and Quinault natives

in between the Tlingit and Coastal natives lived groups of people such as Canada’s

Tsimshian, Haida, Bella Coola, Kwokiutl, and Nuu-chah-nulth (Nootka)

Puget Sound area before the arrival of Europeans and Americans

was one of the most heavily populated areas north of Mexico City

Mount Baker and its large snowfield in the northern portion of the Cascade Range

is within sight of the Lummi, Nooksack, Samish and Semiahmoo people

living in the vicinity of Bellingham, Washington

to the south lived the Skagit, Swinomish and Snohomish people

along the Skagit River and Snohomish River floodplains

and near today’s Whidbey Island

natives further south settled a number of small villages

and fished the Green, White, Puyallup and Nisqually rivers

Duwamish people lived along the Duwamish River in the vicinity of today’s Seattle

Upper and Lower Puyallup natives inhabited the Puyallup River region

Nisqually Indians populated the Nisqually River near today’s Olympia

Squaxin and Suquamish people settled the western shore of today’s Puget Sound

Each of these groups was further sub-divided again and again

to the level of village groups which composed their basic social unit

Puget Sound natives had no formal tribal organization among the different groups

rather, the people lived in very small groups

People generally took their name from their winter home[[8]](#footnote-8)

typical village consisted of one and perhaps as many as three “longhouses”

which comfortably contained four to six families

villages were usually constructed at river junctions or along favorite fishing sites

such as waterfalls or cascades where salmon rested

before continuing upriver to spawn

most Puget Sound natives had both summer houses

comparable to modern summer cabins

MOST OF THE INDIANS OF THE COAST AND PLATEAU WERE COMMONERS

Coastal Indians seem to have a fully developed concept of a middle class of Commoners

who formed the largest segment of the population

vast majority of people both along the coast and in the interior fit into this category

commoners could become rich by trade or gamboling or even conquest

they might hold a celebration to display their ability to destroy or give away wealth

but they could not become members of the aristocracy

Plateau people paid little attention to class distinctions when compared to the Coastal natives

COASTAL INDIANS DEVELOPED A RIGID CASTE SYSTEM

Coastal people were surrounded by abundance, luxury and wealth

yet they developed the most rigid cast system in the Americas

great emphasis was placed on the accumulation of private property

displays of wealth demonstrated the differences between classes of people

men were provided higher status than women

but both genders were grouped into four categories:

aristocrats, chiefs, commoners and slaves

on the coast, it was difficult to move from a lower class to a higher class

but if a person had a special talent or obtained wealth, they might rise in position

COASTAL ARISTOCRATIC CLASS WAS THE HIGHEST SOCIAL RANK

There appears to have been an identifiable elite class among natives along the Pacific Coast

each Coastal village had a few members who achieved the level of aristocracy

nobles claimed almost all of the village’s property rights and personal prestige

Social rank among the Coastal Indians was determined primarily by wealth

members of the nobility were expected to be rich

members of the nobility must also appear to care little for material goods

inherited wealth and nobility were more significant on the coast than in the interior

property rights included the use of family names and crests, ceremonial songs,

origin myths and membership in religious societies

Coastal Indians were very aware of each person’s position in society

wealth was inherited or won by skill, craft, or luck in some combination

personal prestige was usually based on family status and the ability to control wealth

honor and privileges in society were generally based on the ability to hold wealth

or the willingness to give it all away or the readiness to destroy it

to accumulate a vast quantity of goods which could be given away was prestigious

to be so rich as to be able to make a display of destroying wealth was very prestigious

misers were almost always looked down upon

Wealthy natives were aided by a powerful personal spirit

even the wealth itself was protected by a very strong spirit

other people of a lower status did not try to impinge on the property of the aristocracy

however, it was possible for a member of the aristocratic class to lose their exalted status

this happened most often when the person wasted his wealth or lost it gamboling

MEMBERS OF THE NOBILITY HAD UNIQUE PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Members of the aristocracy were physically taller, stronger and better looking than most

their most apparent features were a narrow, long nose and a long forehead

that sloped from the nose to a sharp angle at the back of the head

this intentional head disfiguration was accomplished by “head flattening”

deformed heads were regarded as a mark of distinction and nobility

round heads were considered disgraceful and permissible only for slaves

Flathead deformation was achieved for both males and females

by pressing the back of the baby’s head against a padded cradleboard

an oblong padding of shredded cedar bark was attached to a slanted board

and pressed downward on the baby’s forehead

under side of the board was wrapped in buckskin

and the slanted board was held down with buckskin straps

baby’s forehead was compressed for about a year to flatten the skull

this produced a head which was wedged shape and peaked at the back

Chinook Indians and some of the other villages and tribes especially valued flattened heads

slaves were not allowed to flatten the heads of their children

except for favorite slaves who could flatten their first-born child’s head

Kwakiutl natives of Vancouver Island also deformed their children’s heads

babies’ skulls were bound all around with small cushions or bandages

to press the head into an elongated, bag-like shape

Head flattening may not have been as widespread as stories seem to suggest

ORAL TRADITIONS WERE CONSIDERED TO BE PROPERTY BY COASTAL INDIANS

Specific oral traditions belonged to each wealthy family

these accounts, which usually recounted legends of the family’s origins,

were told only by family members during special ceremonies

as the story-teller presented hereditary family symbols

and reaffirmed the family’s histories and traditions

Publicly owned traditions reflected more universal events

such as how the earth was created, or why the tides change

spirits of Thunderbird, raven, eagle, wolf, bear, frog and whale were commonly depicted

in carvings, basketry art and native dance to reflect their role in the saga

Winter was a time for storytelling about the Spirit World beginnings of human life

there were stories about the creation of each group of natives

and the foolish deeds of the double-sided character, the hero-trickster coyote

POLITICAL LIFE WAS UNIQUE FOR COASTAL INDIANS

Coastal Indians lived in extended families

social tie that held the natives together was a common culture -- not political organization

No formal political organization existed beyond the village

there was no concept of tribe among the Coastal people

there was no sense of brotherhood between communities as each village governed itself

An Indian’s loyalty was to his or her independent village

what might be thought of as Indian nations along the Pacific coast

were really just villagers or groups of villages who spoke the same language

whites later imposed the concept of “nation”to make treaty negotiations possible[[9]](#footnote-9)

EACH COASTAL VILLAGE HAD A HEAD CHIEF

Every coastal village was presided over by a headman or head chief from the noble class

headman or head chief was almost always the richest man in the village

head chief and his children had greater wealth and more important names

than commoners

personal achievements played a lesser role in the selection of the head chief

Position of Head Chief was often inherited

when a coastal village chose a new leader, the basis was wealth

personal achievements played a lesser role in the selection of the head chief

usually the position passed from father to son

if the son had qualifications similar to his father

chiefs and their children had greater wealth and more important names than commoners

children of the chief usually belonged to the same class as their father

but sometimes a chief would marry below his social status

to a commoner or slave woman

in which case the children were thought to be inferior to their father

then a nephew or some close relative was selected to serve as head chief

if at the death of his father should the head chief’s son was too young to assume power

the head chief’s brother would rule as an advisor until the son was old enough

Sometimes two men would claim the title of head chief for a village

each candidate would attempt to give away more possessions

and the man who gave greatest display was chosen

DUTIES OF THE HEAD CHIEF INCLUDED MAINTIANING ORDER IN THE VILLAGE

Primary function of the Head Chief was to settle disputes among members of the village

head chief provided necessary law enforcement and order

he listened to both sides and determine who was in the wrong

he assessed fines and attempted to persuade the guilty party to pay

if the injury was an accident, the head chief determined the amount of the damages

to be paid

Coastal Indians’ membership in the village was voluntary

head chief could be ignored is his guidance was believed to be unsound

those found guilty of injuring someone by the head chief

might choose not to pay the fine

in which case the chief would no longer provide his protection to that person

the victim or the victim’s family could take revenge on the accused

Another duty of the head chief was to preserve and distribute the village’s surplus

since the yield was divided according to rank, the head chief had an excess of everything

this was used to guarantee an adequate diet for each villager

regardless of social status

head chief took care to see that the poor were well looked after

head chief also must provide food for visitors and guests of the village

and provide feasts for significant celebrations

Resolving disputes between Coastal villages was also a duty of the head chief

each Coastal village was responsible for crimes committed within its territory

even though members of another tribe or village may actually be the guilty parties

war parties did not hesitate to do violence to strangers in an enemy’s country

because their enemy would be held responsible by those who had been attacked

when necessary, the head chief attempted to make amends for hostile acts committed

by members of his tribe or village -- for example murder was not entirely unknown

this called for payment of blood money to the victim’s family or blood vengeance

if payment was not made, the victim’s family attempted to kill someone

of the victim’s rank and circumstance in the suspected murderer’s village

sometimes the head chief offered himself as a sacrifice to the offended party

the chief would be killed -- but war would be avoided

Head chief could lose his followers or be replaced

his tenure always was uncertain

if he did not maintain enough wealth, wisdom, courage, prestige, or power

if the head chief had only hereditary power and few other attributes

COASTAL SUB-CHIEFS WERE SELECTED FOR THEIR KNOWLEDGE

Most Coastal villages had more than one chief -- leadership was divided

in addition to the head chief there were generally four or five sub-chiefs

who were brothers or cousins of the head chief

Sub-chiefs served as activity leaders -- this was the person who was best at something

one sub-chief, the best hunter for instance, might assume leadership for hunting parties

for the Makah Indians, the Whaling Chief was an extremely important person

advice of the sub-chief was followed only if it was thought to be correct

Some types of sub-chiefs could be elected rather than assume hereditary succession

if the election result was close women and girls with a Guardian Spirit were called to vote

CONFLICTS DID OCCUR AMONG THE COASTAL PEOPLE

Battles were fairly common between coastal villages[[10]](#footnote-10)

warfare among Coastal Indians was more a pastime than an effort to subdue their enemies

usually conflicts between villages and tribes concerned petty quarrels, minor skirmishes

and hostile acts of witchcraft

Puget Sound natives waged combat among themselves

a few peaceful villages only went to war to defend their collective honor

even then war could be avoided if the offending party paid for damages

to the offended village

they formed alliances and enemies among various neighboring villages

these political relations seemed to be more or less permanent

when one village raided by another old allies fell into line

A WAR CHIEF COULD BE SELECTED

~~I~~f the regular head chief was not war-like, a war chief was chosen by the village

war chief was usually known for his courage, wisdom and leadership

rather than his ability to lead the fighting during the war

indeed, he might have responsibility for protecting the camp rather than fighting

War chief had supreme responsibility -- but he was expected to seek advice and consent

from the war council of leading warriors except in critical moments

War chief had no real military authority

he could only offer advice and carry out the war council’s strategy

Strategy was planned by the war council

no Indian had to follow the orders of the war chief

but if a person resisted the will of the majority of the war council

the war chief might punish him by giving him humiliating work to do,

or make him fight in the front row or,

worst of all, send him home to the women, children and old people

After the campaign, the war chief was expected to give his authority back to the head chief

later this became a problem for whites -- after a defeat the war council disappeared

new native leaders claimed to have been in favor of peace all along

WHENEVER POSSIBLE PREPARATIONS WERE MADE BEFORE GOING INTO BATTLE

A very strong spirit, the War Spirit, could appear to both male and female Shamans

this spirit gave assurance that entering into hostilities would achieve a successful result

Coastal Indians preparing for battle asked the Shaman to determine the proper time to attack

Shaman announced the best day and time for an assault

but he or she could not intervene with the authority of the War Chief

Men held a ceremony and called upon their Guardian Spirits to assure success

they painted their faces black, sang their Spirit Songs and danced their Spirit Dances

if the Shaman predicted a man would die in battle, he did not go on the raid

the warrior was more important than the war

Shaman could go on a raid but they must fight as a regular warrior

Shamans never practiced medicine during fighting

someone wounded in battle could not cured by the Shaman during the fighting

so the warrior had to depend on his own Guardian Spirit to heal his wounds

WARFARE WAS NOT USUALLY DEADLY

Attacks simply were raids of short duration and were nearly always local

raids were not necessarily deadly -- neither side expected total triumph

battles were fought more to save face rather than to achieve victories

Plunder and seeking prestige were among the most common reasons to attack another village

boxes, blankets, dishes, foodstuffs and ritual paraphernalia were all objects to be looted

if the owner of particular songs, crests, or rituals was killed,

ownership of the songs and ritual gear reverted to the attacker

these bloody acquisitions were one way that rituals and ceremonies

were diffused among the villages of the coastal region

Results of raids such as death in the village attacked, destruction of houses and goods,

taking trade goods and foodstuffs, territorial expansion

and retaliation for previous attacks were also incentives to attack neighboring villages

Vengeance often was generalized rather than focused on a specific individual or local group

if a community member was killed by someone from another village

community members might seek revenge against the offender’s villagers

but rather than seek out an individual for retribution, the first person

they encountered who was a member of the attackers’ village might be killed

satisfied, the revenge-seekers returned home

Revenge could be sought even if the death was apparently from natural causes

it seemed the goal was to inflict any death to balance the offended community’s loss

only very rarely did territorial expansion or invasions of another village’s fishing grounds

lead to combat

Indians did not like to fight at night because if someone was killed

that individual’s Personal Spirit could not follow the sun into the Spirit World

battles usually were fought early in the morning

travelling under cover of darkness most raiding and war parties preferred to attack

just as the sun rose illuminating their way through a sleeping village

to assure adequate opportunity to reach the land of the dead

one common method of attack involved throwing burning bushes

on the village longhouse roof to drive the villagers out to be captured or killed

it was customary to call off hostilities after a few casualties had been suffered

HAND WEAPONS WERE USED BY COASTAL NATIVES

To inflict damage on the people being attacked, raiding party’s unleashed darts or arrows

or they hurled stones the size of small cannonballs with slings

this assault could cut an enemy war canoe in half

however, most fighting occurred in melees which were noisy and confusing

combatants closed in quickly and fought hand-to-hand

Warriors carried weapons as diverse as axes, spears, knives and special war clubs

war clubs were the most common weapon

stone head with a groove cut in the center and a point at one end

was attached with rawhide to a hardwood handle about two feet long

some war clubs were made by covering a round stick with rawhide

this rawhide was extended at one end to form a bag which enclosed a rock

these clubs were about a foot long and attached to the wrist with a thong

war clubs often were enhanced with images of human faces, or bear or wolf spirits

Knife blades were of flint or obsidian stone attached to a wooden or bone handle

Bows were crafted by expert bow makers who spent hours walking in the forest

looking for a tree with the proper bend in its grain to make a good bow

usually yew wood or a green strip of pine, cedar, fir, ironwood, or vine maple

was chosen because of its great flexibility and strength

each bow was strengthened by curing, sharpened at both ends and painted

decorations were attached to the bow using glue made from dog salmon skin

which made the bow not only a powerful weapon but also a work of art

this glue was one of the greatest natural adhesives known

it could be used to mend split or broken weapons and even damaged canoes

bows were short and were developed more for hunting than for fighting

they were used for small birds, small and large land game and, occasionally, for raids

during battle few injuries were inflicted

as the bow and arrow was not an accurate weapon

bow string was made of sea lion intestine, deer sinew or hemp wound in glue

Along the coast, arrow shafts were slender -- these were made of wood similar to the bow

bone, flint, or obsidian points were attached to the blunt wooden shaft

or a wooden shaft was whittled to a point with no arrowhead attached

feathers from cormorants, eagles, or loons were attached to the arrows

for water hunting, Coastal Indians used waterproof California shag feathers

these arrows were used for both hunting and for war

PROTECTIVE CLOTHING WAS WORN BY COASTAL WARRIORS

Combatants around Puget Sound wore heavy coats of armor called “clamors”

made of multiple layers of elk hide or some other heavy animal skin

knee-length clamors were worn like a tunic

this armor worked like a modern bulletproof vest

it absorbed the force of spears or arrows or a projectile and diffused its energy

(these vests were nearly able to resist a pistol ball fired at close range

when researchers recently fired stone-tipped arrows into elk-hide armor

the arrowheads fell to pieces)[[11]](#footnote-11)

Some Northern Coastal braves wore wooden helmets and armor

made of moose hide and wooden slats

Chinook Indians along the Columbia River equipped themselves with arrow-proof vests

sometimes small hardwood sticks were bound together and worn like a vest

for heavy fighting natives wore a long, stiff cylinder of elk hide almost ½-inch thick

hardened by fire and water that featured holes for the arms

SOME COASTAL INDIANS WERE MORE WARLIKE

~~S~~ome Northern villages of Washington and British Columbia were more warlike

fierce Haida sea pirates from Haida Gwaii (formerly the Queen Charlotte Islands)

often became violent when an important leader died

it was said they wanted to send someone with their chief

and wanted to make many other people mourn

it seemed to make little difference to them who their victims were

even members of their own village were sometime attacked and killed

Haida natives traveled south in large dugout war canoes that held up to sixty warriors

these raiding parties frequently visited native villages of the Strait of Juan de Fuca,

Puget Sound and along the Pacific coast as far south as California to gather slaves

Chinook Indians of the Columbia River raided the Oregon Coast for the same purpose

Makah and S’Klallam Indians sometimes fell upon unsuspecting villages of Puget Sound

one famous fight concerned a whale which escaped from the Makahs

with twelve harpoons sticking in it[[12]](#footnote-12)

S’Klallams, on whose beach it landed, refused to surrender the present from The Changer

or to even make the demanded payment

this led to a surprise attack by the Makahs who burned several S’Klallam houses

they made off with several enemy heads and a few captives

Modern societies are more warlike -- violence may increase with civilization[[13]](#footnote-13)

TRIBAL ORGANIZATION WAS AN IMPORTANT PRECEPT AMONG PLATEAU PEOPLE

Because of the scarcity of food the concept of group unity was essential for survival

while each Plateau village was independent, the idea of brotherhood or tribe did exist

and linked groups of villages together into a larger political unit

Often no single headman led the tribe which was composed of several villages

power and duties were entrusted to several men, rather than to one

each leader seemed to naturally demonstrate expertise and talent in his area of concern

PLATEAU POLITICAL LIFE DIFFERED FROM THE COASTAL PEOPLE

In (today’s Eastern Washington) leadership selection was generally based on ability

and wisdom rather than heredity and wealth

although a type of aristocracy did exist for the Plateau people

class structure was only weakly developed -- no rigid caste system was present

however social status, such as it was, was based upon personal wealth

Plateau Indian political leaders played a diverse role that varied role from tribe to tribe

Interior head chief’s duties were similar to those of the Coastal head chief

his responsibility was to keep the peace and settle quarrels in the village and tribe

he had to decide who was guilty and met out proper punishment

he had to be sure each villager had enough to eat and receive visitors and guests

To accomplish these tasks, he needed to maintain an influence over a wide variety of groups

but the Plateau head chief had less power to enforce his decisions than Coastal chiefs

head chief of a Plateau tribe was accorded more respect than actual authority

in the Interior, the head chief always faced the prospect of being replaced

by a brave with a following of his own who might call for an election at any time

SIMILAR WEAPONS WERE USED BY COASTAL AND PLATEAU INDIANS

Plateau Indian warriors’ weapons included axes, spears, knives and special war clubs

Plateau Indians produced two kinds of arrows

hunting arrows were much like those of the Coastal natives

in addition, arrows made for the specific purpose of war were used

sometimes these were tipped with rattlesnake venom

In the Plateau region shields made of bison hide shrunk by steaming were worn

these skins were hardened with fire and pounded for several days

SLAVERY EXISTED AMONG THE NATIVE AMERICANS

Although motives for organizing and carrying out an attack on another village were varied

taking captives could be the by-product of any attack whatever the motive might be

Capturing slaves was a common outcome of successful attacks

acquiring young women or boys as slaves was a reason to raid near and distant villages

Even Indians residing within the same village did not have complete immunity from attack

village members of a different family group in the village

might take a rival family member as a slave

Indians seldom killed their captives

ANYONE COULD BCOME A SLAVE

Slaves originally were members of another village

slaves were ultimately the product of violence

they were the lowest rung of a class-conscious society

they were either captives or the children of captives

When a coastal village was attacked anyone living in the community was a potential slave

former rank in the community of the slave was usually meaningless

some of those taken would already be slaves who simply experienced ownership change

Captured village members who held important titles were sometimes ransomed

his people might send a great orator, usually from a different village, to offer a ransom

most often the orator offered two or three slaves for the noble’s release

but many former title-holders spent their lives in slavery

When slaves were redeemed, however, a stigma of dishonor seemed to remain

rituals were performed to remove the stain of slavery,

but the humiliation of slavery, even for a short period of time, was so degrading

that the disgrace of social inferiority always remained

OWNING A SLAVE BROUGHT STATUS

Ownership of a slave was considered a mark of distinction and wealth by the Coastal Indians

percentage of natives held as slaves in the population of the Pacific Northwest

ran as high as one in four in some sections and perhaps even one in three

however, no one person owned a great many slaves

owners of ten slaves were considered very rich

Chinook Indians who lived near the mouth of the Columbia River

held more slaves per capita than any of the surrounding people

an average upper-class family owned two or three slaves

Peaceful people who did not raid neighboring villages acquired slaves from warlike villages

sometimes slaves were bartered or sold or they were won and lost in gamboling

occasionally they were given away during a great display of wealth

SLAVES HAD NO RIGHTS OR PRIVILEGES

Saves, like servants, performed many duties to support the noble class that owned them •women slaves and children prepared and served food and performed laborious

and menial household tasks that in other places were undertaken by free women;

•slaves ran errands and carried messages;

•slaves paddled canoes, fished, hunted and even in made war on neighboring villages;

•slaves made or helped make canoes, cut wood, carried water, etc.;

slaves often lived in the longhouse of their master and his family and shared their food

As a rule, slaves were well fed and treated in a manner that was usual for valuable property

but punishment for shortcomings was sometimes severe

Slaves had no prospect of socially advancing they could not own property

and were subject to the whims of their owners who had power of life and death over them

it was acceptable to destroy slaves on special occasions

Tlingit Indians customarily killed slaves to bury their bodies

beneath the corner-posts of the chiefs’ house while it was being constructed

Washington State Indian Agent James Swan stated that when a Makah chief died

his favorite slaves were killed and buried with him[[14]](#footnote-14)

if a slave had been purchased as a companion for a child

the slave was almost certainly killed if the child died

A great distinction in status existed in all ceremonial practices

slaves were rigidly excluded

generally, a slave could not marry a free man or woman

although James Swan noted Makah men frequently married female slaves[[15]](#footnote-15)

children of such marriages seem to occupy an unclear social position

Men who had lost everything through gamboling or fate could sell themselves into slavery

debtors could offer themselves to an aristocrat as a slave to escape their debt

voluntary slave’s children, however, maintained their own status within the village

When Coastal slaves grew too old and feeble or sick, they were often neglected

or turned out to die

they might starve to death in the wilderness

then their body was unceremoniously thrown in the hollow of a dead tree

or some other out of sight place

STATUS OF SLAVES WAS USUALLY HEREDITARY ALONG THE PACIFIC COAST

Almost everywhere in North, Central and South America the children of slaves were freed

Children of Coastal Indians slaves remained slaves

Coastal people seldom freed their slaves or granted them equality

slaves could be sold at great markets like those held

at Celilo Falls and Kettle Falls on the Columbia River

on very rare occasions a slave could be freed or given away at a potlatch

or other ceremony

to show that their owner was so wealthy that he could easily afford to part with them

also, on very rare occasions a slave could become rich by gamboling or developing a skill

but more ordinarily, if a slave boy found a powerful spirit

and became successful in fishing, hunting, or gamboling

his owner claimed his catch, kill, or his winnings

SLAVERY WAS LESS COMMON AMONG THE PLATEAU PEOPLE

There was little class distinction among the Inland natives of Eastern Washington

slavery was far less significant among Plateau natives as few slaves were kept

often slaves were freed and were granted equality by their owner

many even joined the tribe of their captors and were treated as equals

Several Plateau tribes gave up slavery before it was outlawed by the U.S. government

Flathead Indians of today’s Idaho gave up slavery very early on

San Poil Indians of Washington State believed in the equality of all mankind[[16]](#footnote-16)

every man, woman and child was a member of the tribal general assembly,

any man was eligible to be elected chief but the office gave no higher social status,

meat brought back from hunting expeditions was distributed to all tribal members

as was fish taken at the community weirs

but private effort also was recognized

salmon speared by a man were his to keep

women had rights to their individual efforts such as harvested berries and roots

as were art objects a woman created

Okanogan natives of Washington and British Columbia and several other tribes

shared a strong belief in equality[[17]](#footnote-17)

NATIVE AMERICANS ACCEPTED NATURE AS A GIFT

Water highways provided a system of transportation and a source for food

Forests provided an abundance of food in great variety

and raw materials for a highly developed woodworking technology

natural bounty provided building materials and artistic supplies

and firewood for cooking and heating in all seasons of the year

cedar provided the raw materials for housing, transportation, clothing and utensils

These natural resources were used to meet all of the needs of humans

they resolutely practiced conservation as they used only as much as was necessary

along the Pacific coast this was made very easy because of almost unlimited supplies

WESTERN RED CEDAR TREES PROVIDED A VALUABLE RESOURCE

Coastal people used the wood of several trees, but cedar was the most favored

cedar trees first appeared along the Pacific coast in significant numbers 6,600 years ago

Western Red Cedar provides a unique type of wood that is soft and light weight

it is easily worked using stone, bone and shell blades

and can be bent and shaped using steam

although easily split and shaped, cedar has great tensile strength

Western Red Cedar, second only to salmon in importance, was vital to the coastal people

indications of Coastal Indian woodworking even during the earliest times exist

splitting wedges made of antler were discovered in the earliest archeological sights

early Northwest Indian woodworking skills and technology were well established

between 3,500 and 3,000 years ago and remains unsurpassed in the world

cedar chips have been discovered which date back 3,000 years

Cedar bark consists of two distinct layers:

•outer cedar bark, rough and dead was peeled off the tree in the spring and summer

when tree sap (fluid) rises in the tree

if the tree was not completely circled it would continue to grow

decay-resistant, aromatic outer cedar bark was laid on the ground and dried

it was used to line chests and boxes and as kindling for starting fires;

•inner bark is composed of red, stringy, soft, inner layers was gathered by native women

after soaking for about two weeks the inner bark was pounded into individual fibers

women skillfully twisted, spun and wove this material into long, thick cords

this material could be used for a variety of ingenious domestic functions

instead of cotton or wool to make dresses, cloaks and pillows

for making baskets, ropes, place mats and burial mats

fishing nets were woven of strands of inner cedar bark

when shredded inner cedar bark was packed around them

in baby cradleboards babies found the texture to be like talcum powder

for added strength inner cedar bark was often combined with other cedar parts

such as limbs, roots and boughs

FALLING GIANT RED CEDAR TREES REQUIRED SKILL AND PATIENCE

Large supply of Western Red Cedar trees was available

cedar contains chemicals which resist rot

objects made from it lasted for years and even decades

Western Red Cedar trees bark, limbs and roots provided a major source of raw material

first a huge cedar tree had to be found that was the right size and possessed the right spirit

natives were very concerned about the spirit world

Falling the giant cedar using carefully controlled fires would take days

a notch was chipped into the tree with an adze (stone chipper)

or was dug into the tree bark using chisels

heated stones were placed into the notch

charred wood was scrapped away with a chisel

additional heated stones were placed into the opening as the trunk was burned

wet seaweed or damp leaves were stuck above and below the burn

to control the direction of the fire

when burned nearly through, a niche was cut into the opposite side of the tree

in the direction the tree was to fall

once the cedar tree was felled, the tree trunk was converted into a log

limbs were chipped or burned away

top of the log was burned off to the right height for use as a house post, canoe, etc.

COASTAL NATIVES DEVELOPED ADVANCED WOODWORKING TECHNOLOGY

Cedar provided the advantage to the builder of being easy to work with:

•strait-grained soft cedar logs were easily split into planks along the grain

by using stone hammers to drive wooden wedges or wedges of elk horn

which were driven into the end of the log

as the log began to split, other wedges were pounded into the crack along the log

to spread the split wide open

finally, a stick was pounded deeply into the splitting log to continue the split

this operation was repeated over and over to convert the log into flat planks;

•shaping and hollowing the cedar log into beautiful canoes or bowls was slower work

the woodcarver bored a hole at each end of the area to be hollowed out

then split and chipped away wood in between the holes into appropriate shape

serving dishes and bowels were intricately shaped

into amazing animal and human shapes

•pieces of wood joined together by sewing or pegging which substituted for nails

holes were drilled in each plank with bone awls

strips of root or inner cedar bark twine were sewn from hole to hole

in countersunk grooves to protect the strips from wear

seats in a canoe, bentwood box corners, wooden dance screen boards

and other planks were sewn together to make beautiful and functional objects;

•some wood pieces were pegged together with wooden pegs

pounded into pre-drilled holes

COASTAL INDIANS LIVED IN CEDAR LONGHOUSES

Coastal natives need for shelter was met by an abundance of trees and ingenuity

substantial wooden longhouses gave permanency to coastal villages

Western Red Cedar longhouses have been constructed for at least 2,500 years

the earliest evidence of cedar planks being split dates back equally as old

Longhouses varied greatly in size, design, livability and beauty

they ranged from forty to one hundred feet long and fourteen to twenty feet wide

six to twelve families lived in each building

Chief Seattle’s dwelling, “Old Man House,”

(known in Chinook Jargon as O-le-man or “strong man” house)

was located at today’s Agate Pass near Squamish, Washington

reports of its size varied from 500 feet to 1000 feet in length,

it was about forty feet wide and nearly sixty feet in height

hundreds of artifacts from the site include harpoon points, gun flint stones, adze blades,

smoking pipes, glass and a bone pendant

Old Man House was burned down by the U.S. government in 1870

following the death of Chief Seattle (sometimes known as Chief Sealth)

CONSTRUCTING COASTAL HOUSING ALONG PUGET SOUND WAS AN ART

Longhouses were found nowhere else in America

longhouses and the great adobe pueblos of the Southwest

were the most outstanding native architectural feats constructed north of Mexico

it could take years of labor by tree-cutters and carpenters to construct a longhouse

master builders, believed to have special spirit powers, were aided by apprentices

Two varieties of longhouses were constructed along Washington’s Pacific coast:

•shed-roof longhouses were long and narrow buildings

covered with a roof that sloped from front to back

narrow construction made the building easier to construct and heat

•gable-roof longhouses stood up to forty-five feet in width and 180 feet in length

these could accommodate six to twelve families

they were described by the number of fire-pits inside rather than the number of rooms

House posts served as the corner post where two walls intersected

a number of additional house posts were placed between the corner posts to support

long sections of logs that spanned the length of the building across the middle

these logs served as ridge poles to support the roof

house posts that supported the roof and walls were as much as six feet in diameter

when constructing a house post, outer and inner layer of cedar bark were peeled off

leaving the log’s wooden core for use as a house post

standing the house posts upright was cleverly accomplished

as the posts were laid beside a hole dug in the ground with one side dug at a 45º angle

while the opposite side was dug straight down

several men lifted the top end of the house post

as the base end of the post was put into the hole by sliding down the angled side

until it reached the bottom

a short log was rolled down the sloping side of the hole

pushing the post into an upright position and holding it in place

dirt then was filled in to hold the post vertically upright

very large houses would have four house posts set in a line

with two logs placed end to end on the interior posts to make a very long ridge pole

Roof construction of both shed-roof and gable-roof longhouses required a great deal of skill

raising the ridge pole fifteen or twenty feet into the air was accomplished

by placing the ridge pole across a very large log like a teeter-totter

one end of the ridge pole was lifted the cross-log was rolled toward the other end

when the ridge pole was elevated to the top of the house post it was lashed into place

other end of the ridge pole was raised using successively longer temporary posts

that were used to lift the ridge pole to the height of the house post

once the top of the house post had been reached, the ridge pole was tied into place

shorter posts, like rafters, slanted downward from the ridge pole to the top of the walls

where the short posts were fitted into notches chiseled into the top of the house post

spruce root strips were tied around the joints of the rafters and posts

overlapping planks, like shingles, were fastened to the sloping rafter giving a sloping roof

these shingles were pegged at one end so the shingle could be lifted with a long pole

and swung open creating a vent in the roof for smoke to escape

Construction of the longhouse walls was equally cleaver

cedar logs were split into planks that formed the sides of the longhouse

after being split the planks were smoothed and finished

with an adze made from a shell or piece of flint

planks as much as eight inches thick ranged from three feet to five feet wide

and as long as twenty feet were lashed horizontally to house posts

in overlapping (ship-lap) fashion

these were tied to the vertical house posts using twisted cedar twine rope

or were pegged to the vertical house posts

Several doors were constructed in the longhouse regardless of type

each house might have three or four doors

openings were located on both the long and short sides of the longhouse

partitions often extended out from either side of the door

to protect the inhabitants from the outside draft

in winter, houses had doors of cedar that could be closed by swinging on an upright post

these could be barred on the inside my means of a horizontal log crossbar

in warmer weather mats served as doors or the openings were left uncovered

no windows were cut in the walls of the longhouse

interior light came from glowing fire pits lined with stones or gravel

Longhouses could last for several generations passed by the owner from father to son

an Indian who was about to die was taken outside of the house

if the owner died inside the house it was either burned or given away

when it was given away all people living in the house prior to the death

had to move out

if the person who died inside the house was not the owner,

the house had to be vacated

after a month or two the occupants could return

Chinook Indians living along the Columbia River

fashioned their longhouses in much the same manner as Coastal Indians of Puget Sound

except they used vertical cedar planks set firmly in the ground as walls

depending on the width of the longhouse construction could be a high gable roof

or shed-type roof created with a pitch sloping toward the rear of the building

with either type of construction the roof was held in place with a long ridgepole

both types of houses were supported by house posts and crossbeams (rafters)

covered with overlapping boards and cedar planks (shingles) up to eight feet wide

that were laid over the ridge pole and could be pivoted to eliminate smoke

American explorers Meriwether Lewis and William Clark visited a Chinook Indian village

that was located near the famous Celilo Falls at the Columbia River Gorge -- 1805-1806

they saw houses were built six feet into the ground and one and a half feet above ground

each house measured about twenty by thirty feet and had a gabled roof

a door was located at one end

back half of each house provided storage for dried fish, berries and other possessions

front half of the house nearest the door was the living area

each house was shared by three or four families

SEVERAL FAMILIES SHARED THE INSIDE OF THE LONGHOUSE

Storage containers inside the longhouse were placed along a line

separating neighbors from each other

wooden chests, boxes and baskets used for storing food, supplies and personal property

were placed end to end

cedar chests were constructed of a one single board which made all four sides

cedar boxes were made of split cedar boards laced together used for storage

baskets were made of grasses and reeds

many containers were works of art with carvings or designs worked into the construction

Interior of longhouses along Puget Sound often were divided into rooms at night for privacy

natives used a portable partition to provide a sight barrier from those sharing the house

blankets were often hung between families

sometimes mats made from cedar bark, grasses, reeds, or cattails were used

Along the wall of their apartment each family had its sleeping area

which consisted of wide shelves against the walls that served as beds at night

these were constructed about two and one-half feet from the floor

in front of the sleeping shelf were other platforms about a foot high

that were used as seats, settees or storage places during the day

slaves usually slept on the lower platforms

sometimes planks on the floor covered with mats were used instead of platforms

above the sleeping platforms were storage shelves

usually slanted downward in toward the wall

ladders were used to reach these storage areas

dried provisions were stored in baskets there for the winter

extra blankets were also stored there in the summer

Fire pits were dug in the floor and surrounded by stones for use as a fireplace and cooking

fires were arranged not in the middle of the interior space but rather nearer the walls

there was no chimney -- smoke followed the tapering roof line up toward a roof vent

center area of the longhouse was usually reserved as a passageway

used to get from one end of the dwelling to the other

Floors were packed dirt that was often covered with sand or cattail mats

sometimes mats woven from the soft inner bark of cedar trees served as carpets

When a couple had enough children to crowd the family apartment

the son, when old enough, was given a separate section of the house as his own

if the family was wealthy enough, they could build their own longhouse

Poor natives lived in a lien-to rather than in the longhouse

COASTAL VILLAGES ON PUGET SOUND ALL FOLLOWED A SIMILAR PATTERN

Much of the Pacific Northwest was uninhabited but not unclaimed or unexplored

permanent villages were occupied during the winter

one village could be composed of from three to five larger longhouses together

Usually the village was built on one street

each village, when possible, had a feast house five times the size of a normal longhouse

this building, between one hundred to two hundred feet long, was able to shelter

several hundred people for major social events such as celebrations and feasts

some feast houses were also used as dwellings to house up to thirty families

but this was thought to be a poor village

several kinds of smaller structures faced the water and generally were in a single row

these were always built on the shore of the sound or along rivers and creeks

small “lein-tos”housed the poor

canoe houses served as storage sites for boats and personal belongings

and also provided posts for additional carving opportunities

every family had a fish-drying rack suspended from a crossbeam

OZETTE VILLAGE PROVIDES INSIGHT INTO COASTAL NATIVE VILLAGE LIFE

Ozette Indian village was occupied by Makah people along the Pacific Ocean

on the Olympic Peninsula near the town of Neah Bay, Washington

Ozette may date back farther than the Marmes Rock Shelter site

which was occupied between 11,000 and 9,800 years ago

according to radiocarbon dating part of Ozette was engulfed by a catastrophic mud slide

some five hundred years ago -- around 1560

Washington State University archeologist Dr. Richard Daugherty learned of the site

and led archeologists to dig test pits in 1966 and 1967

high tides during the winter of 1970 washed even more artifacts from where they had lain

Dr. Daugherty and his team investigated several Makah houses caught under the mudslide

Daugherty became director of the Ozette archeological sight

he pioneered wet sight work -- 1970-1981

pressurized ocean water was used to slowly remove the mud from buried houses

and exterior midden (refuse materials) where household items were discarded

Dr. Daugherty preserved Ozette’s wooden artifacts

by soaking them in huge vats of Carbowax

some artifacts, especially those made of hard woods because of their small pores

had to soak for years to preserve them

More than 55,000 artifacts from all aspects of ancient tribal life were excavated

these were cleaned, identified with Makah names, cataloged, preserved

and stored or displayed

among these items are beautifully carved house boards,

an elaborate whale saddle or dorsal fin inlaid with seven hundred sea otter teeth,

numerous styles and sizes of baskets and boxes,

clothing, cradle boards, mats, hats, looms and toys,

fishing, sealing and whaling equipment, ceremonial gear and even metal tools

it is speculated that the metal came from shipwrecks or trade networks

many of these artifacts can be seen today in the in the Makah Museum

at the Makah Cultural and Research Center in Neah Bay

ancestral remains were reinterred out of respect for these people

and in keeping with cultural beliefs about death

Ozette village has been recognized as one of the richest archaeological resources in the world

and has inspired a cultural renaissance for the Makah people

Other possible archeological sites have been identified on San Juan Island and at Enumclaw

but funding is presently not available to investigate these locations

PLATEAU NATIVE HOUSES OF EASTERN WASHINGTON SHOW GREAT VARIATION

Lacking forests, at first the Plateau tribes lived and camped in caves and under rock shelters

later they dug permanent “Pit houses” in the ground which were used in winter

Pit Houses varied in style and design by the location of the tribe of builders

usually these circular in-ground winter houses were located in sheltered valleys

they varied in length from twenty feet to one hundred-fifty feet

interior was excavated to form a round pit five or six feet deep

and ten to fifteen feet wide

roof was placed above the ground on roof poles sloping from the ground

up to a ridge pole that supported a flat, pointed or conical shaped roof

roof poles were covered with planks if they were available

or, if necessary, they were covered with mats

the roof was blanketed with grass or dirt to provide insulation from the cold

a hole in the roof was left open for the smoke

entrance into the house was by way of the smoke-hole down a ladder or center-pole

fire pit provided warmth in winter and the dirt walls provided insulation to retain the heat

rooms were not partitioned by sight barriers

but each family had its space to keep its property and provisions

Later still, long open lodges which became popular with the Plateau people were developed

in winter the lodge could be covered with saplings, grass, tulle mats and earth

Also common in the interior were conical tepees borrowed from the Plains Indians

these were quickly and easily set up and dismantled

Plateau tribes built a “Sweat Lodge”to be used for purification ceremonies and healing

sweat lodges were about seven feet long, six feet wide and four feet high

an oval roof of willows was covered with grass and earth to keep the heat in

entrance to the sweat lodge was covered with blankets and mats

outside the door a fire was built to heat lava stones that were rolled into the sweat lodge

these stones were considered by the Plateau natives to be their oldest living relatives

heated stones were placed in a slight depression in the floor

and covered with water to create steam

usually only one person at a time occupied the lodge

bather shut himself or herself in the sweat lodge with a number of hot stones

steam heat removed toxins from the body, made the heart pump more blood

and caused the native to experience visions

sweat lodges were always built beside a creek or river

bathers, when perspiring freely, could immediately plunge into the cold water

Plateau people believed sweat lodges brought balance and health to the spirit, mind and body

the lodge could bring clarity to a problem or reconnect the native with the Spirit Word

sweat lodges held very strong spirits which could aid the worshipper

to contact his or her Guardian Spirit and to call upon helpful spirits

PLATEAU INDIANS ALSO WERE MOBILE DURING THE WARMER MONTHS

Conditions were less agreeable than along the coast -- food was less plentiful

meeting the challenges of everyday life was more difficult in the Interior

this forced Plateau people to be semi-nomadic to find and gather adequate food

they moved frequently in search of food and game during the warm season

which prevented these tribes from living permanently in one house

life was sparer for these people

Summer houses were portable mat-covered or rush-covered tents

or single or double lean-tos

Plateau people constructed a semi-permanent camp of long and rectangular huts

made of framing poles placed at the corners of the shelter

walls were made of grass, mats, blanket or animal robe

stretched across the rectangle of the building poles

one corner was left untied to serve as the door

gaps between the wall and corner posts allowed breezes to enter

blankets or mats served for the roof

as there is little rain in Eastern Washington in the summer

During the summer, some Interior tribes used teepees adopted from the Plains Indians

frame of the teepee consisted of about ten long poles pointed at the lower end

these were driven into the ground and lashed together with thongs near the top

walls of the shelter were made of reed mats stitched together

or dressed bison hides sewed together stretched over the frame

this lodge could easily be set up by women in a few minutes

some Indian women decorated their tepees with drawings of animals or symbols

When traveling travois (sleds pulled by animals) were used

to carry their belongings and the harvest they collected

these consisted of two long poles that were of unequal length

to prevent both sides of the travois from bouncing along the ground at the same time

woven mats were lashed between the poles to hold the cargo

before the arrival of the horse in Eastern Washington,

dogs were used to carry possessions

WATER UNIFIED THE COASTAL AND PLATEAU PEOPLE OF WASHINGTON

While the Pacific Ocean and Puget Sound provided both food and transpiration

for the Coastal people

rivers and lakes provided food and transportation for people

on both sides of the Cascades

Indians, with the exception of people who lived far inland on the slopes of the mountains,

stayed by the water and used canoes to travel on the rivers, lakes and ocean to get around

rivers were so important to travel that there were almost no trails through the forests

Indians along the Pacific coast seldom traveled more than five miles inland from their village

fear of unknown spirits living in the dense woods ruled out most overland travel

however, some trails led to the beach or to berry picking patches

other trails were developed by migrating animals

Because the rivers were so important it was natural that people kept track of each other

according to river systems or drainages they populated

suffix “amish” found in many of the tribal names

indicated they were the “people of” a specific river system

(for example, Swinomish, Stilaguamish, Snohomish, Squamish and Duwamish)

INDIAN LEGEND OF CANOE OWNERSHIP

Selected Western Red Cedar logs were carved into beautiful and seaworthy dugout canoes

large cedar trees grew in the deep forests many miles from the villages

obviously no modern equipment such as saws or axes or any metal tools were available

not even draft animals were available to move the logs

nor were there roads over which a tree fifty feet log could be carried

there remains the question of how these enormous logs were delivered to the village

An Indian legend attempts to answer the question of how logs were transported

in some coastal villages ownership of a canoe was a religious responsibility[[18]](#footnote-18)

to acquire a canoe, a young man had to fast and meditate in the wilderness for days

during this time, he sang a song as he walked through the woods

asking a tree to bless him with the ownership of a canoe

if his prayers were answered a tree would choose him to be a canoe owner

and would sing back to him

when the young man heard the tree singing, he made camp at the bottom of the tree

there he stayed while he learned of all of the responsibilities of canoe ownership

when the tree was satisfied that the young man was worthy of having a canoe

it would teach him how to fell the tree and how to trim its branches

next the tree would teach the young man a special song to sing

as he returned to his village followed down the mountainside by the tree

at the village the tree would be made into a canoe

ALL OF THE VILLAGERS WORKED TO CONSTRUCT A DUGOUT CANOE

Canoe carving was a highly-developed community skill

found nowhere else in North America

carving a canoe from a single Western Red Cedar log was a community project

it took months to form a canoe and the Coastal Indians excelled in canoe construction

Using wooden wedges, the top portion of the cedar log was split away

once split the cedar log was hollowed out by burning

small controlled fires were built in the log to burn away the inner wood

natives patiently hacked and chipped out the charred wood inside of the canoe

using a hand adze (axe) and other tools made of bone, horn, wood and stone

as the canoe slowly took shape

Indians shaped the outside of the canoe using wedges from elk horn

sides of the canoe were sanded with dogfish skin or, if it was available, shark skin

a series of curved grooves were cut along the length of the outside of the canoe

these were designed to turn aside waves that struck the canoe in a sequence

they were considered an engineering triumph by everyone who saw them

occasionally holes were drilled in the canoe bottom and sides with a sharp hand awl

to measure the thickness using the knuckles of one or two fingers

thickest part of the canoe was at the bottom

these holes were later plugged and sealed with sawdust and pitch

Cedar log was widened and stretched to a width of nearly six feet using steam

inside of the log was filled with water and heated stones were added to generate steam

sides of the log were steamed until the wood softened and became pliable

wedged pieces of yew wood of proper lengths were placed between the gunwales (sides)

at intervals across the canoe to spread and hold the top to make the canoe wider

and give the proper shape

the wide canoe that resulted provided better stability and room to hold more goods

Both ends of the canoe were made from separate pieces of hard wood

front of the canoe featured a prow raised above the water in the shape of a “wolf’s head”

vertical stern of the canoe was tapered

sometimes a canoe’s stern was raised above the water

bow and stern were both attached to the canoe body with pegs

craftsman spun a piece of bone or awl between the palms of his hands

until it drilled a hole through the wood

when holes in the canoe and ends were lined up, wooden pegs were driven through

these holes were later sealed using sawdust and glue made from dogfish skin

Finished canoes were beached stern first to keep the bow in the water

canoes shipped very little water except in great storms

and even then could be emptied with a bailer

CANOES PROVIDE COASTAL PEOPLE A MEANS TO TRAVEL LONG DISTANCES

Coastal villagers traveled the coast of Washington and British Columbia with great skill

a thousand miles and more were traveled by raiding parties to steal and capture slaves

sails made of wooden slats or cedar bark mats occasionally were rigged

for the largest canoes

but most often the Indians propelled their canoes with paddles

Canoes varied greatly in length according to their function

they ranged from five- or six-feet vessels used for ferrying across a river

to great oceangoing canoes fifty and more feet in length:

•lightweight women’s and children’s crafts were maneuverable;

•one- and two-man canoes used in the shallow parts of lakes

could be used to carry goods or for fishing;

•middle-sized cargo canoes were twenty-eight to forty feet long

were somewhat shorter and much broader than oceangoing canoes

manned by an average crew of eight they were used for carrying freight on rivers

a finished cargo canoe could carry a great deal of material

wooden boxes for carrying goods were made with slanting sides

to enable them to fit almost exactly into the canoe bottoms

these Indian canoes were probably the first container ships in the world;

•large canoes -- fifty feet long and longer were used for war and whaling

sometimes canoes carried a crew of twenty-five or more braves

whaling canoes were very sleek and designed for fast, silent travel over the waves

PLATEAU NATIVES OF EASTERN WASHINGTON USED CANOES AND RAFTS

Inland canoes were crudely constructed dugouts or bark vessels with a blunt nose

that were used primarily on lakes

canoes were poled in shallow water -- while in deeper water they were paddled

when used on rivers or streams, the canoe was often left at the downriver destination

little time or energy was dedicated to their construction

these were not the works of art as were the canoes of the Coastal people

Rafts of willows and rushes were used when crossing streams

these were often unsafe but Indians were very good swimmers

many Inland Empire tribes who live on fish had no canoes at all and traveled by walking

COASTAL AND PLATEAU WOMEN WERE BUSY DURING THE SUMMER MONTHS

On both sides of the Cascade Mountains camas root, similar to a potato,

was dug with a sharp stick in June and July

Camas root was tasty and could be eaten raw immediately

or boiled, steamed or baked to be stored for the winter

twenty or thirty bushels of roots were peeled and heaped on the grass in a conical pile

these were covered with grass and allowed to cure

then a hole ten feet in diameter and about three feet deep was dug

this was lined with dry wood on which heated small stones were laid

earth and grass thrown over the stones

camas root was placed into the hole and a fire was built on top of the mound

this was kept burning throughout the night

as the roots turned black the cooked camas root imparted a sweet flavor

sometimes after they were cooked, they were dried whole or ground into powder

ground root was made into dough that was rolled into loaves of eight to ten pounds

these were put through a steaming process and made into cakes

camas root cakes were smoked or dried in the sun

camas root cakes could be eaten with seal oil or fish oil

Pemmican, dried meat pounded into paste and mixed with animal fat, dried berries or fruit

was pounded into a long basket holding about eighty pounds for use in the winter

pemmican provided a variation to the Coastal natives’ winter diet of cured salmon jerky

pemmican was an important food for Coastal and Plateau Native Americans alike

FISHING WAS THE MOST IMPORTANT ACTIVITY OF THE COASTAL NATIVE

Salmon run was anxiously awaited and gravely celebrated

as fish was a staple of the Coastal Indian diet and salmon was the principal fish

salmon season lasted from spring until November

Salmon, depending on the species, spent between three and seven years at sea

before they returned to the spawning grounds along the gravel beds in freshwater streams

five kinds of salmon were caught in the order of the seasonal runs:

•king salmon (also are known as Chinook and Tyee);

•humpback salmon (pink);

•silver salmon (Coho);

•sockeye salmon (blueback, red);

•dog salmon (chum, Keta);

•steelhead (actually a large trout)

each species of salmon returned to a specific river (and thus to an Indian village)

at differing times of the year

Because of their importance to the diet of Native Americans

salmon to be caught and eaten, were always treated with the utmost reverence and respect

COASTAL AND PLATEAU PEOPLE MOVED TO FISHING CAMPS IN THE SUMMER

Coastal people, when the salmon run began in the summer, moved out of their villages

which they had occupied during winter and early spring

they moved into summer villages large and small

located along the salt water beaches and along the rivers

outer planks of their permanent houses were removed, loaded into canoes,

and were taken to their summer settlements only to be brought back in the fall

Summertime for the coastal Indians resembled vacation time in the Pacific Northwest today

everyone tried to get away to a quiet place to relax and engage in frequent celebrations

there were many large gatherings of people from the various villages in the summertime

this was a time for large feats and visiting

marriages were arranged and business transacted

between families of different villages

fishing stations were, for the most part, hereditary

various people would share even the lengths of streams

Coastal men spent much of their time fishing at their summer fishing camp

Coastal women, between their efforts at summer’s gathering,

brought their families to join the men in their temporary fishing camps

it was the duty of the women at all fisheries to clean and dry or smoke the catch

after a few hours in the sun, skins were easily removed from the fish

flesh separated from the bones was mashed as finely as possible

this was spread out on frames covered with matting

until it was dried by the sun and wind

salmon also was smoked when smokehouses were constructed

COASTAL FISHING TECHNIQUES VARIED BY WATER CONDITION S AND SIZE

At least five different fishing techniques were used depending on where fish were harvested:

•freshwater lakes provided an opportunity to catch a variety of fish to use as food;

•rivers, streams and creeks that drained into various inlets and bays of the“Salish Sea”

(Strait of Georgia, the Strait of Juan de Fuca, and Puget Sound)

were another source for food;

•waters of the shallow bays, estuaries and tideland flats provided fish and shellfish;

•Salish Sea itself was composed of considerably deeper and broader bodies of water

than the shallow bays and was still another source of food;

•Pacific Ocean, almost boundless in length and depth, provided additional fishing places

Freshwater lakes offered the opportunity to catch a variety of fish residing there

but lakes also provided access to catch salmon as they entered on their way to spawn

Indians gathered where a river or stream entered a lake to spear or gaff the salmon

(a gaff is about six feet long with a hook at the end)

salmon were hauled in with one swift, continuous motion by the fisherman

baited hooks were not used as salmon on their way to spawn do not eat

sometimes when salmon arrived at a lake in large quantities during spawning season

some natives used nets to herd large numbers of fish toward the shore

where they could be easily be taken by a variety of techniques

Tideland areas of salt water were generally fished by impounding the salmon

during high tide salmon would come into the narrow and secluded parts of bays

Indians would build large pens using nets while the water was still high

when the tide went out the salmon would be trapped inside the pens

For small, narrow creeks and streams the Coastal people used ingenious funnel-shaped traps

that had been wedged between two logs with the large opening facing downstream

funnel traps were woven of spruce root fibers and flax

that had been secured from Interior natives through barter

a salmon swam into the wide end of the funnel but could not escape out of the narrow end

when attempting to withdraw from the trap by swimming backwards

the fish’s gills were caught on the narrow edge of the funnel

fisherman later revisited the trap and removed the fish pulling it out by its tail

nets were also used, but had to be tended more often

as frequently too many fish were caught or the net would be torn by the fish

Larger creeks and streams and small rivers saw Indians use gill nets

these were long nets designed to catch fish of a specific size which was determined

by the openings of the mesh in the net -- smaller fish were allowed to pass through

but the net would snare the gills of larger fish when it tried to force its way past

gill nets were set in a river for hours at a time then pulled to shore when filled with fish

generally, these nets were not placed across the entire river

but rather on alternating sides of a river every several hundred yards apart

so that some fish would pass around the nets and continue upriver to spawn

Even larger streams and rivers were fished using the native’s most famous technique -- weirs

weirs were usually community property

large weirs were built across the river to stop returning salmon from continuing upriver

weirs varied with the width of the stream but generally consisted of three tripods

made of vertical alder and willow planks about eight feet long

and one to two inches thick

these were sharpened to a point at one end and embedded in the stream bed

tripods were held together with a long pole toward the top of the planks

pickets lashed with cord to a long pole between tripods made a fence

across the river that held up the salmon as they swam upstream

each tripod above the water had a platform usually owned by a village family

permission had to be given for anyone else to use the fishing platform

once the salmon were trapped behind the weir, natives stood on the platform

and used four-foot to five-foot long dip-net

the fisherman dipped into the school of fish held by the fence

he lifted the fish from the water and clubbed it to death

weirs provided a way to keep salmon nearby and alive before they were harvested

Very large rivers were frequently fished at waterfalls and rapids where salmon would rest

before leaping forward to continue the journey toward their spawning beds

fisherman stood on a rock above the turbulent water holding a dip net

which was used because the salmon could not be seen

sometimes the fisherman stood on a scaffold built over the rapids

fisherman might remain motionless with spear poised above his head

for half an hour waiting for an opportunity to strike

in calmer water where the salmon could be seen the fisherman might stand on a rock

holding a twelve-foot-long spear pole cut with a wooden fork attached to the end

between the tines was attached a barbed shell or iron point

in very calm water a harpoon could be used

each harpoon had two heads of elk horn pointed at one end and notched at the other

this elk horn tip was attached to the spear shaft and tied firmly

a long rope was also attached to the spearhead

so if it came out of the fish the spearhead would not be lost

Fishing very large calm rivers was accomplished using nets strung between two canoes

when a large number of salmon had been harvested

natives would paddle the two canoes together closing the net

sometimes the fishermen harpooned fish from the canoes

Indians always provided a means for salmon to escape the net

by swimming under or around it -- even when multiple nets were used

LUMMI INDIANS DEVELOPED METHODS OF FISHING FOR SOCKEYE SALMON

Lummi Indians living near the northern part of the inland waters of the Strait of Georgia

developed a unique kind of fishing aptly called “reef-netting”using two canoes

a small net was tied by a cord to tall upright poles attached to the stern of both canoes

the other end of the net sloped downward under the two canoes

and was attached to a cord held by fishermen toward the front of the canoes

thus a sort of scoop was formed under the two canoes

as salmon swam into the net, they believed the floor of the bay was rising

role of the fishing chief was vitally important in this type of fishing

because split-second timing was necessary the head fisherman had to have

an incredible sense of timing and an intimate knowledge

of all of the factors that affected fish life

he needed an almost mystical sense about the salmon, the water, the nets,

the current of the water and his men’s ability to raise the net quickly

he stood on a tower in the bow of one of the canoes

he had to tell from the movement of the water how far into the net fish had come

if the net was raised too soon the salmon would be frightened and swim away

if it was raised too late, the salmon would be able to swim over the net

or they would be able to detect the net in front of them and swim around it

at a certain point the head fisherman would shout

this was a signal to his fishing companions at the front of the canoe

to raise the net from the floor of the bay thus trapping the fish

fishing chiefs who enjoyed continued success as a reef netter were considered

to be possessed of a supernatural ability and religious powers over the salmon[[19]](#footnote-19)

once the wild salmon were caught, they were gently spilled into a netted “live well”

to relax after their brief struggle and to allow the built up bitter lactic acid to dissipate

resulting in a sweeter-tasting flavor

unwanted species that may have been caught were placed back into the water

remaining salmon were bled by cutting a gill

before being placed in another live well to swim until they bled out

Reef-netting sites were the most prized inland fishing grounds because the catch,

generally, sockeye salmon, was considered a delicacy by all the tribes of the region

catching sockeye meant that the Lummis could trade extensively with other tribes

for desirable goods -- especially for the whale and seal oil

and meats killed and preserved by other coastal villages

(reef net ownership proved to be a great aid in scholarly interpretations of Indians treaties

by comparing the ownership of reef-netting locations with signatures on treaties

it was determined that no Lummi Indian would sign a document that took away

his reef-netting site -- thus when reef-net sight owners signed a treaty

this was an indication that native fishing rights remained in place)[[20]](#footnote-20)

OTHER FISHERIES WERE AVALIBALE TO THE NATIVES OF THE PACIFIC COAST

Great varieties of fish other than salmon also were available to the Coastal natives

small fish like smelt, herring, or candlefish were valued for their oil

they were caught in abundance using scoop nets

smelt were harvested where rivers met the salt water

using a long stick with a cross-piece with sharp bones attached

that was lashed to the handle like a rake

herring were taken in bays or inlets with the same rakes

natives caught olachen or candlefish, an eight or nine-inch extremely oily fish,

that is so rich in oil it could be used like butter or lighted to serve as a candle

lake trout were readily available to be taken with a hook and line

by trolling (moving the fishing location by paddling the canoe)

and jigging (wiggling the fishing lure)

flounder fishing used one of the most exciting techniques used by the region’s Indians

flounders are a flat fish that tend to rest on the bottom of mudflats along Puget Sound

Indian fisherman would wade into the mudflats until they stepped on a flounder

they would stand on the fish long enough to spear it with a sharp stick

while this method sounds simple, the spectacle of a hundred Indians

all wading in the muddiest water in the region with sharp sticks

continuously stabbing at their feet was a frightening scene to those who watched

as difficult as it is to believe Indians, even with all this frenzied activity,

rarely speared their own feet

Large fish such as true cod, rock cod, ling cod, skate, halibut and sturgeon were harvested

Makahs, Quileutes, and Quinaults used special hooks and long lines

they dared the open sea to catch deep-water halibut and cod

halibut, cod and skate fishing made use of a hook made of hemlock

a bone point was lashed with root and bark to the hook

natives fished for halibut twenty miles and more off Tatoosh Island

sturgeon fishing was done with harpoons which were thrown from canoes

fisherman also carried bird spears for small useful game

COASTAL INDIANS HAD AN ABUNDANCE OF FOOD

Early Coastal Indians were very fortunate as food was there for the taking

they successfully lived off the resources of the sea and land

no other area of equal size in the world enjoyed as much material prosperity

their diet was much richer in fats, proteins and minerals than in most other places

but they could become somewhat deficient in starch and other carbohydrates

even without the constant availability of salmon coastal people inhabited a land of plenty

mammals and sea-life from the ocean provided year-round food

as well as household items and commodities to trade

hunting seals, sea otters, sea lions and the like in the ocean and the large straits

took both great skill and technique as nets were of no use

Coastal natives enjoyed an abundance of easily acquired sea life

meat was needed only for variety

while the sea provided a dependable harvest of fish, shellfish and marine animals

most of the fish that was eaten came from streams -- not the ocean

Both Coastal women and men left the winter village during the month of May

to gather clams and other shell fish

when a large supply was obtained, women dried them and took the catch home

Native women and girls of the coast gathered shellfish such as fresh oysters, barnacles,

mussels, crab, abalone, sea urchin and lampreys almost year around in the shallow bays

and on the beaches

while some of these were dried for winter use,

most of the harvest was eaten during gigantic feasts

crabs were usually plentiful in the spring at the northern end of the Olympic Peninsula

During the spring Coastal women gathered eelgrass and seaweed to vary their family’s diet

both fish eggs and bird eggs were gathered, eaten and used in cooking

pheasant, lark, duck and goose eggs were most commonly used

meat of birds and small animals added variety to the Coastal diet

a large variety of vegetables were gathered and prepared by women in the spring

like common and woolly burdock; the stems, leaves and flowers of various bedstraw

Coastal men west of the Cascade Mountains, fished the Columbia River and its tributaries

which ran thick with salmon in the spring, summer and fall

Chinook Indians lived in well-establish villages along the Columbia

other Indians established semi-permanent camps when fish were running to spawn

Costal climate was less harsh than in Eastern Washington’s desert-like area

no attempt was made at agriculture and none was needed

VARIETIES OF FOOD LED TO TRADE AMONG THE COASTAL INDIANS

Because food and other trade items were so plentiful along the Pacific coast

Coastal people had to become specialists in order to produce unique goods for trade

simply smoking salmon was not enough because everyone did

rather, different villages developed specialty items that would be coveted by others

in order to participate in the trade

no one grew extremely rich and no one was very poor

it was a system that worked out well for everyone

Some villages specialized in catching and preparing a certain species of salmon

while other villages concentrated their efforts on another species

so sophisticated was their taste that many natives could tell from one bite of the food

exactly what stream a fish had come from and which Indians had prepared it

Makah Indians did not have sufficient cedar of suitable quantity for houses or large canoes

however, the Nootkas (Nuu-chah-nulth on Vancouver Island) had a plentiful supply

Makahs traded for cedar canoes and planks with the Nootkas

offering in exchange whale oil and seal oil, dried herring roe ( a type of caviar)

and other products that could be obtained only in the Pacific Ocean

Makahs also traded whale meat for red ochre used for paint and cosmetics

found only in Quileute territory

When the complex number of trades among natives is considered

it is possible to understand how the Indians of the area welcomed the fur traders,

the first non-Indians to come among them

PLATEAU INDIAN MEN FISHED A VARIETY OF RIVERS IN SUMMER MONTHS

Plateau Indians of Eastern Washington needed salmon even more than the coastal people

Inland natives were dependent on fish as a primary food source

but fish was not as abundant as in Western Washington

Plateau Indians left their permanent villages and camped beside the rivers they fished

such as Celilo Falls and Kettle Falls on the Columbia River

where salmon were forced to leap over waterfalls

fishing camps presented a holiday aspect from June to October

at some fishing places a principal leader was chose

his authority was final in determining the daily division of the fish catch

Depending on their surroundings Plateau Indians used different methods to catch fish

Indians stood on shaky wooden platforms that extended over the waterfalls and rapids

with a rope tied around their waste in case they fell

they speared and dip netted salmon as they jumped out of the water

some tributaries of the Columbia, like the Spokane, Salmon and Clearwater rivers,

supported large annual salmon runs that provided an important food source for tribes

some of the largest salmon ever caught in the Columbia River Basin

were taken from the Spokane River (a tributary of the Columbia)

summer-run Chinook salmon some close to five feet long weighed up to 80 pounds

(pioneers, after their arrival, called these giant fish “June hogs”)

sometimes fish traps were constructed in smaller streams and rivers

occasionally nets made of vines and plant stems were used to catch trout and salmon

COLUMBIA RIVER PROVIDED A UNIQUE FISHERY

Columbia River provided a link through the Cascades and was significant source of salmon

Indians from many tribes and villages, both Coastal and Plateau peoples,

gathered along the Columbia River at Celilo Falls

which was a major center of native commerce during the salmon run

Chinook Indians who lived along the Columbia River had a unique manner of catching fish

they would construct a net some five hundred feet long and nearly fifteen feet in depth

that would be placed in the river going nearly completely across in some places

when the salmon run began, they would gradually pull one end of the net toward shore

fishermen would wade into the river with mallets and clubs to kill the fish

and throw them up on the bank

this technique required many men and was useful only when there was a large run

but the salmon runs on the Columbia River in the old days were incredibly large

PLATEAU NATIVE HAD FEWER RESOURCES AVAILABLE TO THEM

Plateau Indians lived east of the Cascade Mountains in the interior of the Pacific Northwest

in the area between the Cascade Mountains and the Rocky Mountains

Inland people faced a harsher climate and more difficult terrain

than Indians along the Pacific coast

Plateau natives were more mobile than those living along the coast

food was not so easily acquired as along the Pacific Coast and was in shorter supply

hunting and gathering, basis of life, took more time

natives lived their lives as nomads forced to move in search of food

from fishing sites in rivers, lakes and streams to hunting grounds, to fields of root

to berry patches

Plateau people made extensive use of salmon, deer, roots and berries

their diet included more starch and berry sugars than the Coastal Indians

because they were very mobile materialism was far less significant than along the coast

as personal belongings and heirlooms could not be easily carried from place to place

COLMBIA RIVER LINKED THE INDIANS TOGETHER

An extensive system of trade extended across the Cascade Mountains to Eastern Washington

Puget Sound people, who had more salmon than they knew what to do with,

even so often traveled across the snowy Cascades to trade for salmon

that had come up the Columbia to the famous Celilo Falls of the Yakima Indians

most Indians considered the absolutely best salmon

was that of the Yakima Indians who lived along the Columbia River

(Celilo Falls, unfortunately, is no more)

Coastal Natives traveled up the Columbia River to fish at the waterfalls

they brought with them to sell to the people of the mountains and the interior

five species of salmon, dried clams, camas root, sea otter fur, seals, whale bone,

oil from whales and dogfish, haikwa (a precious seashell),

and a variety of other fish and foods

they also sold slaves they had captured

Indians who lived along the Columbia River in the mountains

exchanged dried or smoked salmon for buffalo, antelope and other meat delicacies

mountain goat meat was considered a treat among many of the Coastal natives

and they were happy to trade their fish for it

for instance, people who lived on the western slopes of the Cascades

brought goat meat to the Makah Indians and traded for whale meat and oil

Plateau Natives such as Cayuse, Palouse, Umatilla and Nez Perce Indians

traveled down the Columbia River on fishing expeditions to the waterfalls

they brought antelope skins, bison robes, flints, dyes and beaver pelts

they exchanged mountain sheep wool, porcupine quills, hand-made embroidery

and a kind of grass from which Coastal women made delicate threads for sewing

Chinook Indians living along the Columbia River

became rich and powerful as middlemen in the trade

Chinook Jargon composed of a variety of languages became the natives’ trading language

Wishram natives living near The Dalles, (Oregon) grew rich trading near home

they caught fish for barter in exchange for roots, fur robes and later horses

trade between the coast and the interior had to go through them

they took a toll from all travelers by robbing them

Trading for various commodities became quite complicated

gatherings at Columbia River fishing camps resembled a combination fair and carnival

athletic contests, gamboling, dancing, and later, horse racing

provided welcome relief from fishing

COASTAL AND PLATEAU WOMEN WERE ESPECIALLY BUSY IN THE AUTUMN

Both Coastal and Plateau women often worked apart from the men during autumn

as the women and children traveled to the mountains to gather roots and berries

they also were busily occupied with preserving the bountiful yield

much of the work of harvesting and preserving was done in groups

seeds were gathered and stored for use throughout the year

sunflower seeds were pounded into meal used for cooking meats

pine seeds were roasted or boiled

crab apples and nuts such as acorns and hazelnuts

were gathered around the fringe of the forests

tubers were used in great quantities by both the Coastal and Plateau people

wapato (wild potato) grows in shallow lakes to about the size of an egg

these have a white meat and are very sweet and nutritious

wapato was eaten fresh or dried for use later

berries in a seemingly infinite variety grew in season

Oregon grape, gooseberry, salmon berry, raspberry, salal berry, wild strawberry

these usually were sun dried or spread on cedar bark and dried over a fire

for winter use

occasionally they were preserved by mashing them in a large basket

then molding them into pemmican cakes

elderberry and blackcaps (blackberries) were dried

Indians burned away the underbrush so huckleberries would grow better

trees were not damaged because lack of vegetation

kept the fire from getting too hot

both huckleberries and choke cherries sometimes were boiled

tea was made from huckleberry leaves

serviceberries and hawthorn berries were dried, pulverized, moistened,

these were made into small pemmican cakes and dried again

Plateau women also harvested roots, berries, nuts, seeds and gathered fruits in season

roots of bracken fern and wood fern were gathered in the fall and winter

kouse (an edible plant), bitterroot, wild onion and other roots

were important food sources that grew on most prairies

they formed a larger part of the Plateau diet than was necessary along the coast

supplementary foods were also gathered by Plateau women

tribes along the Snake River set grass fires to gather scorched grasshoppers

dried grasshoppers were pulverized with a pestle in a mortar

and beaten into a pemmican- like mass

Okanogan natives made bread from tree moss that was dried

to reduce the moss to a pasty condition which was then molded it into cakes

dried the inner bark of pine trees were eaten

dogs and horses (after they were introduced) were eaten in times of extreme want

AUTUMN WAS THE TIME WHEN COASAL AND PLATEAU INDIAN MEN HUNTED

Both Coastal villagers and Plateau tribesmen were interested in hunting

hunting dogs were bred for chasing game

Coastal and Plateau men used pit traps with sharp pointed stakes driven into the bottom

bear traps consisted of a four foot to five-foot hole covered with brush

dug under a horizontal pole

two poles about ten feet high were erected near black bear tracks

a heavy horizontal log (dead fall) was placed on top of the poles

dead fall was attached to a rope that was tied to the brush which covered pit trap

when the bear stepped onto the brush and crashed into the pit

the horizontal pole crashed down on the animal

the drop of the heavy log would (hopefully) kill the bear

Snare traps also were used on both sides of the Cascade Mountains for other land animals

deer, elk, caribou, mountain goat, wildcat, cougar

as well as squirrels, rabbits, groundhogs and other small animals were killed for food

all of the necessary materials for a snare trap were natural and readily available

strong, young trees were used for the springs of the trap

a release stick and a trigger stick were easily found and rawhide rope was available

Sometimes when deer or elk came close enough to the village to be considered game

these large animals were run down and killed when they became exhausted

or they were chased into the water where they were defenseless as they swam

and were killed with arrows or clubs

however, fear of the forests ruled our chasing game too far from the village

and weapons were usually useless against large beasts

Also adding variety to the winter diet was beaver which were killed with spears

when hunters in canoes broke open the beaver’s dam,

beavers appeared to repair the break and would be killed

Birds were hunted by Coastal and Plateau Indians from early autumn into the winter

in autumn duck, geese and other waterfowl were caught in large nets stretched between two tall poles placed upwind from a pond where ducks spent the night

at a given signal natives carrying lighted torches would come out of the darkness yelling

birds, frightened by the noise and lights, flew off head first into the net

and would fall to the ground where Indians would gather them as they lay stunned

bird’s neck would be broken by holding the duck’s head and bill in one hand

and swinging the bird’s body in a circular motion

small parties of Coastal and Plateau men would hunt for several varieties of birds

that provided variety in their diet

snipe, pheasant and grouse, smaller sized doves, and larger sized pigeons

were hunted and eaten -- natives never ate gulls, eagles, or hawks

birds were hunted with a sling about three feet long made of willow bark string

that had loops at the end for the fingers

pocket of the sling made of small piece of animal skin attached to the string

held the missile

On the Pacific coast game meat and birds provided variety in the Indian diet

deer and elk provided venison that was dried with special care

meat was cut into pieces and placed on a wooden frame to dry

fires were built on three sides and the meat was thoroughly roasted

before it was hung higher above the fire and slowly dried

meat was kept in trees or covered with cedar bark to keep it out of the rain

if the coastal hunter was very successful everyone from the village gathered for a meal

after the feast, the hunter gave presents to his friends

Some Plateau natives invaded the land of the Plains Indians during seasonal migrations

Flathead Indians of Western Montana joined with friendly Nez Perce natives of Idaho

in the pursuit of buffalo beyond the Rocky Mountains

small in number, these wandering bands from the Columbia Basin were always wary

as they knew they were trespassing in a foreign land

bison hunters used a sportsman-like chase to kill their prey

hunters removed all of their clothing

approaching their prey down-wind and from behind, the herd was stalked on foot

sometimes the hunter selected an animal and separated it from the herd

by dashing between the animal and the other animals

hunters would attempt to kill the bison with bow and arrow

sometimes the herd was driven over a cliff over a “buffalo jump”

herd members would follow the lead animal over the cliff

native men and women waited below the jump

wounded animals were killed with spears and clubs

animals would be butchered where they lay

(later acquisition of the horse made buffalo hunting easier)

COASTAL MEN HUNTED FOR A VARIETY OF SEA ANIMALS IN WINTER

Hunting parties along the Pacific Ocean set out in quest of porpoise, seal, sea lion and otter

seals were especially valuable both for their meat and for their oil

seal hunting was carried out from canoes using harpoons

after the kill, the seal carcass was brought to the beach

before butchering the seal, it was slowly rolled over in a fire to singe off the hair

then its skin was scrapped off

seal was cut open and the fat was removed

seal grease was eaten with dried salmon and clams

seal oil, stored in seal and fish bladders, was used by the villagers of Puget Sound

sometimes oil was poured on a fire to make it burn better

PLATEAU NATIVE MEN HUNTED FOR A VARIETY OF MEAT IN WINTER

Plateau Indians lived their lives similar to the way Plains Indians lived

they depended on deer, elk, bear and other game for food and clothing

and to supplement their diet because salmon was less plentiful than along the coast

these animals lived on the many small prairies and foothills of the Cascade Mountains

After fall fishing season was over, hunting parties were organized

all native people hunted large game at night -- particularly in the wintertime

torches of pine heavily covered with pitch were carried

coming upon a deer or elk the sudden light of the torch would startle the animal

which would freeze long enough to get a clear shot with bow and arrow

sometimes an ambush was laid at a valley’s narrow end into which game was driven

other times wooden traps and dead falls were used where trees were available

IN WINTER WHALES WERE AVAILABLE TO SOME OF THE COASTAL PEOPLE

Hoh, Quileute and Quinault Indians living on the Olympic Peninsula beside the Pacific

simply searched for whale carcasses that washed up on the beach

California Gray whales, about forty feet long, were frequent visitors to the coastal waters

these were butchered and divided among the members of the village

each village member’s status determined the allotment received

S’Kallam Indians used “whale fencing”along the Strait of Juan de Fuca

when a whale swam too close to shore and became stranded by the receding tide

S’Kallams took to their canoes and drove long poles into the rocky beach

thus they constructed a fence between the whale and open water

as the whale attempted to swim away from the fence -- that is, closer toward the shore

when the tide went out the whale became beached

eventually the whale was high enough on the sand to allow for killing and butchering

MAKAH INDIANS CONDUCTED WHALE HUNTS IN WINTER

Makah Indians of Cape Flattery caught a few salmon and many halibut in their coastal waters

but they were primarily renowned as the whalers of the Northwest

cooler months were spent preparing and practicing

with canoes, harpoons, floats and ropes

whale hunts took place in November, December and January

when whales migrated through the area

after appropriate ceremonies were held to honor the spirit of the whales

natives usually ventured in groups of four canoes -- 100 or more to a hunting party

Makah natives were skilled hunters who were both strong and agile

they were so respected by the other Indian people for their ability and daring

they were considered to be the aristocrats among all of the Coastal Indian people

they were always seated at the places of honor during native feasts and ceremonies

Nuu-chah-nult (formerly Nootka) Indians of Vancouver Island

also hunted whales off the island’s Pacific coast

they also were held in very high esteem by other coastal natives

Today’s Eskimos provide insight into the methods of ancient Northwest Indian whaling

when Eskimos hunted whales along the Northwest Alaska coast

they used open, ocean-going dugout canoes forty feet long and six feet wide

each whaling crew member occupied the same place in the canoes

and performed the same tasks as did whale hunters in Washington

equipment was much the same as that used by Makah hunters

In the ancient whaling village of Ozette on the Olympic Peninsula’s Makah Reservation

artifacts of tools that indicate whale hunting activity dating back 2,000 years

have been found

MAKAH INDIAN FAMILIES OWNED DESIGNATED WHALE HUNTING GROUNDS

Makah Indians portioned off areas of the ocean into exclusive family allotments

these areas were owned like property and were handed down from father to son

various landmarks on the shore were used to establish where lines would intersect

as if they had been drawn on a map -- a concept unknown to native people

Makahs could take a canoe almost out of sight of land and still identify his family’s area

by sighting noted land features such as points of land, high mountains or river mouths

compasses and nautical tools were unnecessary

because from the time each boy was old enough to ride in a canoe

he was taught where the fishing and whaling areas were and who owned them

WHALING REMAINED UNCHANGED FOR THOUSANDS OF YEARS

Big whaling canoes up to fifty- or sixty-feet long and over six feet wide

held as many as twenty-five to thirty men

and traveled as much as twenty miles into the Pacific Ocean

whaling canoes, although very large, were tiny beside the gigantic whales

Makah whalers wore a poncho of seal skin to stay dry

spruce root hats covered their heads and shaded their eyes

bearskin robes were used for warmth

To propel the whaling canoe a thin and flat paddle blade and handle

was carved out of one piece of maple or yew wood and tapered to a point at the bottom

whaling paddles sanded smooth with shark skin or dogfish skin were indented

much like a teaspoon

for speed the spoon-shaped surface was used to propel the canoe

quiet and caution were necessary to approach the whale

at a signal the paddles were turned sideways to silently slice through the water

Harpoons were constructed of yew wood shafts with a cedar bark rope attached

it was necessary to come very close to the whale

as the harpoon was thrust rather than thrown

tip of the harpoon was made of flexible shell or elk horn (later copper) tied to the shaft

when the harpoon was thrust into the whale, the tip flattened against the shaft

as the harpooner pulled back on the harpoon the tip sprung open

and remained in the animal

one end of a long rope was attached to the harpoon

and the other end of the rope was attached to the canoe

WHALING CHIEF WAS DESIGNATED TO THRUST THE HARPOON

Whaling chief was a man of great religious powers who knew the whales and seals

he was highly regarded and well rewarded for his exalted position as the harpooner

these very exceptional leaders had been taught songs

to encourage the animals to become food for the people

these songs, passed down in families from generation to generation,

were a family’s most treasured heirloom

there was no greater insult or theft than to steal a song from a family

whenever someone tried to do so a great crisis was generated in the village

In the canoe the harpooner was followed in importance by the steersman

WHALE HUNTING WAS EXCITING AND FUN FOR THE MAKAHS

When the harpooner located a whale, he raised his arm holding the harpoon into the air

this was the signal for paddlers turned their paddles 90º

and use the edge of the paddle to displace the water

almost silently, they approached the whale

Harpooner attempted to drive the harpoon into the whale

once the harpoon had been thrust into the whale, inflated seal bladders

attached to the harpoon line were used as floats to slow the wounded animal

and keep it from diving

Wounded whales could react in several ways:

•sounding -- diving toward the bottom of the ocean

when this occurred, the harpooner would use his thumb to feel the rope as it exited

if the rope was exiting too fast or the end of the rope was approaching

the harpooner simply cut the rope and let the whale go

•swimming away pulling the canoe after it at breakneck speed

natives grabbed the gunwales of the canoe and held on

hoping the whale would not turn and attack the canoe smashing it to pieces

•stopping in the water and flipping its tail thus smashing the canoe to pieces

Sometimes whales carried the hunters out to sea fifty or more miles

Makah natives always found their way home

even in high seas and in thick fog banks, their navigation was unerring

All of the canoes of the expedition would approach the injured whale to give assistance

they would attempt to sink additional harpoons into the whale

thus more and more seal bladders were attached

the great mammal became exhausted dragging so many floats

as the whale lost some of its agility, it became increasingly difficult to swim

Natives used the whale’s great strength to deliver it to a more convenient place to be killed

Indians maneuvered their canoes to drive the harpooned whale toward the beach

When the whale was near death, native swimmers jumped into the water and dived under

they placed a series of ropes attached to sets of two seal bladders (floats) at opposite ends

under the whale to form a sling to hold up the whale

seal bladders were then blown up to keep the whale afloat

canoes lined up and worked together as the whale was guided and towed to the beach

when the whalers finally arrived at the beach with their prize

natives could finish killing and butchering the animal

On the beach a celebration took place which usually lasted for days and ended with a feast

blubber (whale fat) was eaten and boiled to extract whale oil that was of great value

harpooner was rewarded for his skill and daring

he was given the choicest portion -- the hump

he saw to the distribution of shares to the crew and other members of the village

Much of the wonder of this spiritual and economic activity

was how successful the Makahs were as they beached the gigantic animals

with tools and canoes totally inadequate for the task

since they did not try to kill the whale immediately

it was a rare occasion when the Makahs lost a whale

CEREMONIES MARKED IMPORTANT EVENTS IN THE LIVES OF NATIVES

Birth, entry into adulthood and death were each important ritually protected events

most ceremonies included some time for smoking

all men smoked pipes for pleasure and ceremony -- women did not take part

pipe’s bowl was made of stone

the stem was from a hollow bird bone or plant stem

mixture of bark and tobacco known as kinnikinnick served as tobacco

when pipes were smoked the breath, believed by Indians to be source of life,

became visible

exhaled smoke rose to The Changer carrying prayers

when a pipe was shared it was believed the smokers shared the same breath

MOST COASTAL NATIVE CEREMONIES WERE HELD DURING THE WINTER

Because a great variety of food was available in such abundance along the coast

Indians, therefore, were free to develop an impressive social life

Coast culture was the most spectacular of all of the natives in the Pacific Northwest

and, perhaps, in all of North America

Dreary and rainy winter along the coast was a time for most important religious ceremonies

with the one exception of the first-salmon ceremonies which were observed

at the beginning of the salmon run in the spring

when not involved in religious rituals, Indians spent their time making household goods

and fishing steelhead trout which returned to the rivers in winter

to provide fresh meat which was added to foods preserved the previous summer

WINTER CEREMONY PROVIDES AN OPPORTUNITY TO HONOR THEIR SPIRIT

According to legend, once a year the Guardian Spirit must leave the person

and travel in a counter-clockwise direction around the earth

during this journey the Guardian Spirit could be gone for up to a year

Guardian Spirits gambled and traded as they traveled and the owner’s luck varied

according to the success of his or her spirit experienced during its travels

Guardian Spirit came back to the owner in time for the Winter Ceremony

which was held sometime between mid-November and the beginning of January

when the Guardian Spirit returned, the owner felt sick

and he or she would hear their Spirit Song singing in their ears

Eight to ten weeks were exclusively given over to spirit dances during the Winter Ceremony

impersonating a person’s Guardian Spirit was part of the ceremony

which featured individuals singing and dancing -- and perhaps a presentation of gifts

dancers wore spirit masks that were identified with their Guardian Spirit

those watching saw the participant not just as representatives of the spirit

but as the spirit itself who had descended from the Spirit World to dance and sing

therefore, the dancer must act out every detail of everything told in the spirit’s legend

and the performer was not responsible for what was done during the performance

friends were called upon to help the dancer sing the Spirit Song

and dance the Spirit Dance

if no one knew the song the friends followed along and learned it

During the ceremony each individual was expected to give gifts to guests, family, and friends

when the dancing and singing, which could last for several days, was over

it was expected, if the performer was rich enough, a gift of many blankets

would be given to the friends who had assisted

if the performer was poor no gifts were expected

Plateau native Colville Indians’ Winter Dancefeatured a special “power” performance[[21]](#footnote-21)

known as “going behind the blanket”

while blowing steadily on a whistle, the “powerseeker”

stepped behind a mat or blanket hung between him and the audience

he soon reappeared with his arms behind him, thumbs tied to his belt with rope

before the eyes of the audience, the knots were untied

and he disappeared behind the blanket

the powerseeker repeated this activity seven times

during the rest of the performance behind the blanket he was “cut in two”by a rope

and reassembled by the spirits

then he was carried away by the **“**Owl Spirit” and finally was restored to his normal self

audience participated by lighting a smudge, passing the pipe

and asking questions of the spirits

only the Colville Indians did the behind the blanketceremony

INDIAN MEN WITH THE SAME GUARDIAN SPIRIT FORMED SECRET SOCIETIES

Every winter both Coastal and Plateau Indian children watched Secret Society members

perform their spirit songs and dances which were taught to them by their Guardian Spirits

Society members shared prestige because they possessed a particular Guardian Spirit

to belong to any society a youth had to be from the higher classes

in order to pay the dues and provide the required feast

very elaborate displays of their status were made during the Winter Ceremony

elaborately carved masks representing the spirit were worn

these masks were carved only in secret, usually in the seclusion of the deep woods,

so that no uninitiated person could discover and identify the maker

secret society decrees governed how often and how long a mask could be used

“Black Spirit Society” was one of the most prestigious among the Coastal people[[22]](#footnote-22)

this society’s dominating spirit was a very frightening one

probably a cannibal monster from past ages

this spirit was desired because of the power it gave to endure pain and heal the sick

but the spirit could not be found by mere seeking

when the requirements of the Black Society, including initiation, had been completed

members could wear a hideous mask

and join in the terrifying rituals of the society to show they felt no pain,

Makahs slashed their arms and legs and danced with blood streaming

although this society was disappearing by the time Europeans arrived

it was still known to the Chinooks, Quileutes, Makahs, S’Klallams,

and some of the Puget Sound villages

No Secret Societies existed in the Interior tribes

all of the men and some of the women of the village danced during the Winter Ceremony

INDIAN RECREATION CELEBRATED THE JOYS OF COMMUNAL LIVING

Native Americans held children’s games were important whenever a group gathered

shinny (a kind of hockey) where sticks were used to drive balls over a one-mile course

wrestling and tug-of-war were played

marksmanship games also honed skills and sportsmanship

Adult athletic contests were displays of both skill and good fortune

which proved their Guardian Spirit was active and helping in daily life

gamboling was a favorite activity and was conducted almost constantly

in addition to providing recreations gambling also redistributed wealth

women watched men gamble and helped by singing -- but never participated

if a man lost everything, he owned gambling, he might sell himself into slavery

THE BONE GAME WAS LONG AND COMPLEX

The Bone Game was played for thousands of years between rival teams within a village

or between disputing tribes, and even nations in conflict

since a higher value was placed on human life than was placed on material possessions

each side was willing to set and lose significant stakes

rather than go to war over a dispute

Two teams of five players each were formed -- each player had a role in the game

decisions were made by consensus adding greatly to the time necessary to play the game

first the five ritual roles had to be filled: the verbal negotiator, the silent negotiator,

two hiders and one pointer

Selecting who played what role was time consuming

first a “Power Object” had to be selected

each player on a team offered a personal treasure to serve in that capacity

only the person holding the Power Object could speak

all others had to pay attention

all of the proposed Power Objects were passed counter-clockwise one at a time

around the circle of five players

when the Power Object was received the owner explained why this was good choice

in turn the other players explained why this would be a good or bad choice

after all of the potential Power Objects had been considered a vote was taken

one thumb up for YES; thumb down for NO; palm open face up for NEUTRAL

next, using the same process, players were selected for each position

holding the Power Object each player explained

why he or she was a good choice for a position

after completing the circle a vote was taken for each of the five positions

verbal negotiator was the only person who could speak to the other team

and then only to that team’s verbal negotiator

silent negotiator reminded the verbal negotiator of his or her team’s intent and wishes

and could report on the other team’s actions and intent to the verbal negotiator

two people served as hiders who actually played the game trying to hid the bones

pointer was to identify where the bones were hidden by the other team’s hiders

After making these decisions by consensus and each player fully speaking his or her mind

a meeting was held by the two verbal negotiators assisted by the silent negotiators

to decide where the game would be played

after reporting back to their respective teams a decision regarding the location

was reached by consensus using the usual process

Next the stakes for the game had to identified -- this could a collection of individual wagers

or a collective wager proposed by the whole team

these stakes were real and the losing team must be willing to deliver what was bet

one team might wager all of their winter wheat as the other team wagered eight slaves

or, perhaps, a war was avoided

again the verbal negotiators aided by the silent negotiator

met to reach an agreement on the wager

none of these processes could be rushed -- time is of no significance

Now the game itself actually began as each team’s two hiders sat across from each other

four carved or painted bones small enough to fit in a person’s closed hand were displayed

two were worth one point each and two were worth no points

one team’s two hiders went away to decide who would hold which bones where and how

team members provided advice on how to hide the bones to confuse the other team

for example, one hider might hold a one-point bone in one hand and a no point bone

in the other

or both point bones might be held in one hand and the no point bones in the other

while the other holder held nothing

Before the game started the bones were shown to the other team’s pointer to avoid dispute

team members silently stood behind their hiders who passed the bones back and forth

and used sleight of hand to confuse the other team’s pointer

finally they stopped and the pointer used his or her index fingers to point out

where bones were being held

this could take as long as the pointer wanted before the actual guess was made

spiritual help in selecting the location of the point bones was acceptable

when the bones were displayed the points, if any, were added

this game was played to seven and could take several days to complete

POTLATCH CEREMONIES REDISTRIBUTED THE WEALTH OF NATIVE AMERICANS

Huge feasts were the most important social event for the coastal native people custom of holding a “potlatch**”** centered on today’s Vancouver Island

most of what we know about potlatches has been learned

from the Kwalitul and Nuu-chah-nulth (Nootka) Indians

all Coastal Indians of today’s United States and Canada held potlatches

potlatches, usually held in winter, and included a feast, singing and costumed dancers

S’Kallams and Quinaults infused potlatches into the Winter Ceremony

Potlatches were conducted to celebrate an important event in the life of the host or his village

such as a birth, receiving a Guardian Spirit, marriage, or finishing a new longhouse

this gesture also could be suggested by the host’s Guardian Spirit

if a man had the “wealth” spirit, his “partner” might say to him: **“You had better throw away our money now. I (the spirit) would like to hear all the shamans sing their song.”[[23]](#footnote-23)**

occasionally, a “Dignity Potlatch”might be necessary to offset some humiliation

in Northwest Coast native culture, a person could not be laughed at

or they lost all dignity

if a chief had an embarrassing moment such as falling out of a canoe

a smaller potlatch was held to reestablish his dignity

Most importantly, potlatches became a way for families to display their wealth

it was considered meritorious to give away everything and start over

generosity made a man famous

a wealthy man enjoyed distributing his wealth himself rather than after his death

purpose of the potlatch was to humiliate the guests by out-giving each of them

host’s social position could be altered depending on the potlatch’s size and success

Each person invited to a potlatch received gifts related to his social rank

canoes, slaves, carved serving dishes, candlefish oil and other items were distributed

the more wealth given away, the more prestige was bestowed on the host and his family

Potlatch feasts were held in the potlatch house if the village was wealthy enough to have one

very wealthy, prominent hosts would have a longhouse specifically for potlatching

and for housing guests

some potlatches lasted as long as two to three weeks

EXTENSIVE PREPARATIONS WERE NECESSARY FOR A POTLATCH

Potlatches were hosted by a prominent aristocratic Indian for all of his extend family

this large family unit was thought to have descended from a mythical animal

who descend to Earth and removed his animal mask thus becoming human

the mask became a significant family heirloom passed from father to son

along with the name of the ancestor

each member of the family was an incarnation of the founder

During the potlatch titles associated with masks and other objects were redistributed

each family member held title to a rank which identified where he sat at the potlatch

one person could hold several ranks and could be elevated or demoted

depending on the number and significance of the gifts presented

in effect, the host challenged each guest to exceed his “power” in giving away

or destroying goods

if the guest later did not give away all of the gifts received and destroy even more wealth

he and his people lost face and so his power was diminished

It could take years for a wealthy Indian to save up enough property to give a proper potlatch

host must collect canoes, mats, blankets, jewelry, baskets, carved boxes,

cooking, serving and eating dishes, and hundreds of other items which were needed

valuables were taken from storage places to be given as gifts

huge amounts of food must be prepared to feed guests

slaves had to be purchased to provide service for the guests

POTLATCH CEREMONY WAS A GALA EVENT

Host sent out invitations to his family members in the village and in surrounding villages

guests arrived wearing their best clothing

each guest brought gifts of fish, deer, blankets, shell money and other valuables

in an attempt to bring more than was received back in gifts

thus shaming the host with their generosity

An official orator greeted the guests as they arrived at the beach

village orator gave long speeches telling the story of the host’s family and village history

he sang and danced during the especially significant parts

as the orator talked, presents were piled before the orator by the guests

everyone was anxious to give something to a famous speaker

Strict rules of seating were observed

the guest with the greatest wealth and highest social position

was seated first at the right hand of the host

next most honored guest was seated at the left hand of the host

next most honored guest seated at the right hand of the most honored guest

next most honored guest seated at the left hand of the second most honored guest

the seating would continue down the length of the serving area

commoners and slaves must be content with what was left

Each village performed their ceremonial dance during the potlatch

while villagers danced, other village members gave presents to the spectators

Several rounds of gifts were given by the host throughout the potlatch

each person receiving a gift was under an obligation to the host

guests were disgraced if in the future they could not invite the host

to a potlatch of their own and return gifts of even more value

thus the host anticipated getting back more than he had given

CONCLUSION OF THE POTLATCH

From the most exalted to the lowest person, each received part of the region’s natural wealth

this was a form of Indian communism

but the resources were redistributed according to wealth rather than according to need

this mutual sharing of the natural resources made it difficult in later times

for United States government officials to impose a system of ownership on natives

However, the host had kept his most important possessions for himself

his family name and his valuable resource-producing assets

such as the rights to his hunting and fishing grounds and berry-picking patch

in the meantime, his personal status had been enhanced

of course, he now anticipated attending other potlatches as an important guest

who would receive much more material wealth in return

NORTHWEST NATIVES PRODUCED EXCELLENT ARTWORK

Coastal women produced beautifully woven artwork

spinning thread was done with a spindle and whorl (flywheel or pulley)

spindle was held under the spinner’s right knee and was set in motion

by twisting one end while the other end of the spindle was held up high

by means of the thread held in her left hand

spinner twisted wool on her right thigh to be added into the thread

when part of the thread was twisted sufficiently, it was wound on the spindle

near the whorl and was further twisted by the rotation of the spindle

more wool to be added into the thread was then twisted on her thigh

other materials such as inner cedar bark and nettle threads could be added

and the mixture spun into the thread

soft down of duck or goose feathers stripped of quills and pounded with a stick

was mixed with downy fiber of fireweed, milkweed and mountain goat fibers

which had been pulled from bushes or removed from a goat that was killed

women beat white clay and vegetable fibers into the wool to whiten it

Weaving the threads on a loom into material gave the artist an opportunity

to develop her artistic skills and to dress her family well

each loom was made of two strait posts set on the house floor and leaned against a wall

cross pieces, at the top and the bottom, ran through holes drilled in the uprights

weft (horizontal) threads were stretch across the loom

warp (vertical) threads were woven through the weft and attached to cross pieces

S’Kallam Indians of the Olympic Peninsula raised a special breed of dog with woolly hair

these were kept on several small, isolated islands in Puget Sound

women took canoes to the islands each day to feed the dogs

dogs, their forelegs were tied together, were shorn like sheep

S’Kallam women used a stone knife or a mussel shell to chip off the dog’s hair

which was combed into strands with the fingers

these strands were made into threads by use of a wooden spindle

dog wool was skillfully woven into robes that were sometimes called “Salish blankets**”[[24]](#footnote-24)**

that were used as bedding and, in winter, as robes

Dyes added color and interesting designs to clothing, baskets and mats

mud was used to make black while Oregon Grape root produced very pretty yellow

cherry bark gave a bright red

wool sometimes was dyed pink with hemlock or alder bark

other plants and plant combinations also were used to provide an endless variety of colors

COASTAL WOMEN’S BASKETRY ART WAS HIGHLY DEVELOPED

Coastal Indian women gathered grasses in summer and soaked the fibers in water

until winter arrived when they had time to patiently pull the fibers into threads

Village differences could be seen in the variety of baskets woven:

•some villages made coiled baskets with a foundation made of dried cedar root

these were used for cooking purposes;

•softer twined baskets with borders of dog wool were made by S’Kallam villagers

these were used to store possessions;

•loosely twined baskets with ribbed twill bottoms also were made

these were used to store dried foods -- often they were lined with maple leaves

COASTAL NATIVE MEN ALSO WERE EXCELLENT ARTISTS

Coastal art found a highly developed expression in woodcarving and painting

distinctive style of artwork developed by Coastal men

was unsurpassed for beauty and expression

Tools and techniques for carving, splitting, joining and steaming Western Red Cedar

allowed Coastal people to augment their lives materially, artistically and spiritually

wood carvers used two main tools:

•adze carving tools were used to rough out the shape and to carve fine details;

•hand hammers made of stone hammerheads fastened to wooden handles

and bone and antler hammers were used for detail work

when sanding was necessary, a sandstone block or dogfish skin “sandpaper” was used

sometimes shark skin, when it was available, was used to polish the finish

cedar root was also used in the construction of beautiful and useful objects

Highly prized useful products were skillfully constructed by craftsmen

baby cradles were crafted from cedar posts

decorated wooden storage chests, dishes and bowels were beautifully made and prized

beautifully carved fanciful wooden masks were worn during ceremonial dances

watertight bent wood cedar cooking boxes were used -- often these were works of art

one single split cedar board made all four sides of the box

this long board was thinly notched across its width at three separate points

steam was used to make the board pliable and soft enough to bend at the notches

two ends of the board were joined to make the fourth corner

which was fastened with wooden pegs or sewn together

when the box was allowed to dry the wood contracted and closed the joint

making the box entirely waterproof

COASTAL INDIANS WERE HIGHLY SKILLED WOODCARVERS

Carvings made in soft cedar wood recorded the events in the family’s history

tall posts on either side of the door, houses posts and beams were beautifully carved

with small, delicate designs, characters and symbols shown in intricate detail

sometimes part of the post was painted red

this art reflected the life events and myths of previous generations of villagers

Art objects such as house posts, grave posts and a myriad of other carvings

demonstrated the craftsmanship prized among the Coastal natives

Cedar withes (slender and flexible branches) were used to make a sturdy three-ply rope

an example of which was found in a whaler’s longhouse at the Ozette archeological sight

as was a harpoon head made of mussel shell stored in an envelope of cedar bark

Coastal natives lived inside a family history book

figures such as the residents’ Guardian Spirits or legends of the family living in the house

were often displayed as was the tribal mascot

mascots were usually the figure of a bear, raven, eagle or another animal

they represented supernatural powers that had helped the family’s ancestors

if a new owner took over a longhouse and no house posts remained available for carving

he would add on and carve his Guardian Spirit and the life events of his family

Totem poles were rarely made by most of the Indians of Washington State

however, wonderful totem poles were carved by the Haida people

who lived in British Columbia’s Queen Charlotte Islands (now renamed Haida Gwaii)

and the Tsimshian people of today’s British Columbia and Alaska

and Tlingit natives of Alaska

totem pole carving skills eventually were carried down the coast to northern Washington

PLATEAU INDIANS ALSO WERE SKILLED ARTISTS

Plateau Indians were not as materialistic as the Coastal people because they moved so often

natives of the interior could not collect and carry as many things with them

possessions were not as highly prized as they were on the Pacific Coast

however, basket containers and receptacles, often acquired through trade, were used

Decorative art was simple and inconspicuous compared to the coast

woodworking was insignificant compared to the coast

Plateau Indians could not spend the time making beautiful objects

as food was not as readily available

frequent moves and lack of suitable materials discouraged Plateau artists

from building and keeping large art objects

JEWELRY WAS IMPORTANT TO THE PEOPLE OF THE PACIFIC COAST

All Indians enjoyed decorating themselves -- men also wore jewelry

Coastal Indians were strongly attracted to the colorful and ornamental

no costume was complete without jewelry

Coastal people were especially fond of necklaces and bracelets

strings of shells were used as both necklaces for decoration and as money

shells made from animal teeth or tusks, bone, clams and stone were all used for necklaces

beaver teeth, bear claws, clam shells, string of shell fish,

and most highly prized slender, white tuck-shaped marine mollusks

(dentalium), were often used

Natives Americans wore body piercings

nose jewelry was placed in the septum separating the nostrils

lip jewelry, such as fragments of abalone shell and other beautiful shells were inserted

Northern Washington Coastal villagers usually pierced children’s noses at about age five

most native children had their ear lobes pierced at about age eight

this procedure took place in connection with receiving a second name

hole made with a bone awl by an old person who was paid for their service

sinew was kept in the hole to prevent it from closing

only wealthy Indian men and women pierced around the rim of the ear

Many Coastal natives adorned themselves with body paint

paint made from colored powders and deer tallow was used for these decorations

paints were used for both ornament and protection of the skin against bad weather

both men and women painted their faces red to prevent chapping

sometimes painting was done with designs related to the individual’s Guardian Spirit

Tattooing the body was practiced only by Coastal women

girls at age ten or twelve were tattooed using a gooseberry thorn and charcoal

tattoos were usually placed on the lower arm or the leg just below the knee

these designs were purely decorative -- they had no connection with the spirit world

NORTHWEST NATIVES ENJOYED A VARIETY OF FOOD AND CLOTHING

Native Americans usually wore very little if any clothing during the spring and summer

men below the upper class wore a breech clout or nothing in warm weather

men often went bareheaded

women of middle or poorer classes wore a sash of coiled nettle root tied around the waist

from which strands of twisted inner cedar bark fiber hung to form a knee-length

fringed skirt that gave women the appearance of waddling when they walked

some women wore a six-inch strip of deerskin four feet long as a breech clout

no covering was used for the upper part of the body

Clothing worn by the nobility and at ceremonies was very elaborate and beautiful

upper class women wore a shirt that extended from the shoulders to below the knees

long sleeve shirts worn by these women had strings of shells sewn to the underarms

and often had shells or sea otter fur stitched around the neck

short sleeve shirts worn by upper class women had sleeves to the elbow

which were often trimmed with sea otter fur

leggings that were tied at the knee with straps also were sometimes worn

well-to-do men wore a breech clout and buckskin leggings from the waist to the ankles

leggings were not sewn together like trousers

inner cedar bark was used to make a variety of durable and functional articles of clothing

such as cedar bark tunics and rain hats suitable for the damp climate and water travel

Indians along the west coast, both men and women, went barefoot

Coastal peoples wore two types of basketry hats as protection against the rain:

•large cone-shaped hats with a broad brim which spread out over the shoulders

was worn by most of the Coastal people

known a “cheapool” it made of woven spruce root;

•Chinook people and other tribes along the ocean wore conical shape and brimless hats

made of tightly woven inner cedar bark or spruce fibers and grass fibers

woven with designs of whales and animals -- sometimes with a knob on the top

As the rainy season set in along the Pacific coast

Coastal people used oil from fish to protect their bodies against rain and dampness

oil was rubbed onto the skin as a cosmetic and as a coating to repel rain

women wore a twined fiber cape of cedar bark over a buckskin shirt

which reached to the hip and tied together down the front with a buckskin thong

this outer cover provided added protection from the rain

As the weather became colder and wetter more clothes were added

both men and women of all classes wore two kinds of shirts in cold weather

sometimes they wore a shirt with long sleeves but usually the sleeves were short

woven blankets or animal skin robes also were added in the winter

hides used in producing these robes were either dressed on both sides

or the animal hair was worn to the inside

both genders wore rain capes made of shredded bark or mats, bear skin or seal skin

thrown over the back, spread out over the shoulders and fastened across the chest

usually with animal hair to the outside, but reversed in cold weather

winter moccasins were sewn with animal hair still attached and turned to the inside

most people wore caps of beaver, elk, or deer skin

poor people and slaves wore a plain blanket over the shoulders

Along the western slope of the Cascades walking was more important and more difficult

natives wore leggings and shirts of animal skin to protect them from the underbrush

clothes of buckskin were suitable for mountain life as they were light weight

and easy to move in

CLOTHING OF THE PLATEAU PEOPLE WAS NOT AS VARIED

Both genders of the Plateau Indians wore buckskin smocks, leggings and deerskin moccasins

made of one piece of hide with a seam up the toe

a flap made of tanned animal skin was sewn around the top of the moccasin

a separate piece, often decorated with beads, was sewn over the instep

moccasins were tied with a strap around the ankle

heavy buffalo robes were highly coveted by both men and women

Plateau Indians added variety to their clothing by decorated their garments in many ways

fringe could be added at the bottom of dresses and skirts

ends of the sleeves were accented with the teeth and claws of wild animals, feathers, fur,

porcupine quills, bone tubes from small animals and birds

and scalps of foes killed in battle

VARIETY OF COOKING METHODS MADE MEALS INTERESTING

Cooking fires were started in a fireplace hearth

very dry cottonwood root with a series of notches on one side held the tinder fire starter

tinder was finely shredded cedar bark that was placed in the notches

fire was usually ignited with a hand-drill of very dry cedar

twirling the cedar drill in the cottonwood notch caused the shredded bark to ignite

Cooking methods varied by the meal being prepared and the pleasure of the cook

Coastal Indian women were able to devote some of their creative energy toward cooking

typical native women could easily relate more than 200 recipes

for preparing and combining food staples such as salmon, berries, camas root

and vegetables without exhausting her mental cookbook

during the rainy season along the coast cooking was moved indoors

as the fire was built in the fire pit in the longhouse floor -- one hearth per family;

men often helped with the cooking, serving and cleaning up

especially on ceremonial occasions

Methods of preparing foods varied almost as much as the food supplies:

•poaching food in watertight baskets and boxes was popular with the Coastal Indians

to cook in watertight baskets, fish or small pieces of meat, berries, roots, etc.

were placed in a basket of water into which stones heated by the cooking fire

were dropped to bring the water to a boil

these stones were handled with wooden tongs

after being boiled the fish was placed on a platter

family members stood around the kettle

seashells or spoons made from mountain sheep horn were used

to scoop up the remaining food and broth from the cooking basket or box

or the broth was ladled into serving dishes of bark or wood

as the Indians sat on the ground;

•baking was done frequently along the Pacific coast

a fire pit was dug in the ground and lined with stones

a fire was built in the bottom of the pit

round stones were added to the fire to retain heat

meat was placed atop the stones

leaves were placed over the meat to keep it clean and the hole was filled with dirt

meat was left to cook for the proper amount of time

fish was covered with slabs of split driftwood on which round stones were laid

and the same baking process was used

this method was particularly successful for tough-fiber plants like camas root;

•steaming was accomplished as watertight baskets or boxes held food being prepared

a tight lid held the steam in the cooking basket or box

smooth stones were heated around the fire and picked up with a forked stick

these were placed in the basket or box which was partially filled with water

during steaming other heated stones were add to keep the water boiling

•barbequing (broiling) salmon was done on an upright wooden framework

salmon was held on the vertical frame by wooden dowels

woven around the upright frame

to sear the salmon and retain the moisture the framework was placed close to the fire

cooking commenced after searing when the fish was moved away from the fire

it would be moved closer to or away from the fire as needed

to maintain the proper cooking temperature;

•drying in the sun and wind resulted in a verity of jerkies being preserved for later use

meat, fish, game and roots were all prepared in this manner

salmon eggs, considered a great winter delicacy, were dried and smoked

sun-drying food along the coast was risky because of the inconsistent southerly wind

and the usually high humidity;

•smoking meat, fish and eggs required a smokehouse

which cooked and preserved at the same time

smoke houses for curing fish and the drying racks were privately owned

(this distinction between community ownership of the means of catching fish

and family ownership of the means of preserving fish

was misunderstood for decades by lawyers involved in fishing rights cases

who insisted that because Indians shared the fishing weirs

they had no concept of individual property rights

but if there was no way to preserve the fish once it was caught

fishing was of little value

this fact indicates the importance of personal property rights to the Indians)[[25]](#footnote-25)

COASTAL NATIVES GATHERED FOR MEALS

Only two meals were served a day -- about 9:00 a.m. and again at about 6:00 p.m.

before sitting down to a meal, mats were placed on the floor

to assure guests were completely satisfied men and guests ate first

women and children ate after

Table manners centered on personal cleanliness

necessary because of the use of common serving dishes

each villager washed his hands and dried them on towels made of inner cedar bark

each villager rinsed out their mouth with water

liquids were never drunk during the meal

solid food was picked up with the fingers

at the end of each course, a bucket of water and towel was passed around for washing

SERVING PLATTERS OF THE COAST WERE AN ART FORM

No pottery dishes existed -- both serving platters and individual dishes were made of wood

serving platters shaped like blunt nosed canoes were several feet long

cooking containers such as boxes and baskets also were used at the “table”

Serving dishes used for parties, feasts and ceremonies were elaborately carved and decorated

these were much more beautiful than every day dishes -- they were works of art

carved slate or wooden bowls were highly polished and inlaid with bits of shell

some bowls were extremely large -- usually constructed in the shape of an animal

and sometimes in the shape of humans

wooden ladles and horn spoons were used for serving

those too poor to own wooden ladles for eating could use clam shells

COASTAL AND PLATEAU NATIVE PEOPLE PRACTICED PERSONAL CLEANLINESS

Cleanliness was extremely important to Coastal Indians -- bathing was a daily ritual

during the bath the body was rubbed with rotted twigs or yew leaves

shredded inner cedar bark was used as a towel

white stones found on river banks were used like soap

Personal grooming care was consistent among all of the natives of the Pacific Northwest

tweezers made from deer horn were used to remove men’s facial hair

combs were made of yew wood and measured about eight inches in length

while the teeth were about three inches long

very little girls wore their hair hanging loose

young girls’ hair was braided tightly to make it grow better

before marriage, a girl’s hair was combed and dressed by her mother or grandmother

women parted their hair down the middle from the forehead to the nape of the neck

their hair hung loose on both sides covering the ears

from there it was braided on each side

ends of the braids were wrapped with buckskin and tied

men and boys parted their hair in the middle

it was tied in a knot with buckskin on the neck

when men went to war, they braided their hair in one braid

and tied the braid to the top of the head with buckskin

when a man’s hair grew too long it was cut off at the waist line

rich men often braided otter skin into their hair for ceremonial occasions

sometimes duck down was put into the hair and painted red

NATIVES AMERICANS ADVANCED THROUGH THE STAGES OF LIFE

Babies were appreciated and enjoyed by everyone -- especially the grandparents

Toddlers explored their world through play

Children began to learn important life skills -- play is the work of children

Quest for a Guardian Spirit provided entry into adulthood

Marriage was arranged for both men and women

Adult natives provided the necessities of life and family stability, enjoyed recreation,

recognized the Spirit World and appreciated the role of The Changer

Old age was a happy time for Indians as their responsibilities diminished

and there were grandchildren

BABIES WERE GREATLY APPRECIATED AND WELL PROVIDED WITH LOVE

New born babies were thought to have come from a land of babies where they lived happily

while there, babies were free from all adult interference and happily enjoyed other babies

Indian babies usually received a series of names throughout their lifetime

almost all native people gave the child a nickname at birth

girls used this name to about age eight

boys used this name to about age ten or twelve

Infancy was a very uncertain time for parents as Indians suffered high rate of infant mortality

they believed that if not kept happy the baby would return to the land of babies

that special place where infants might live and play without adults making demands

babies were very well cared for so they would choose to remain with their parents

Cradleboard, with slight variations, was universally the same for all natives

and for both boys and girls

cradleboard was home for the baby for at least the first year of life

cylinder to hold the baby was attached with strips of buckskin

laced through holes burned in a small flat cedar plank

naked infant was placed inside the cradleboard

shredded talcum powder-like inner cedar bark was used to fill the cradleboard

padded rolls of inner cedar bark were placed under the neck, arm pits

and under the knees

sometimes padded rolls were used to flatten the baby’s head

babies were cared for like a valuable treasure as he or she enjoyed complete security

baby was nearly always strapped to the mother’s back

and viewed the world over mother’s right shoulder

Mother and baby enjoyed a great deal of physical contact

every day infants were taken out of the cradleboard and washed in lukewarm water

mothers massaged their babies daily to make them grow straight and strong

baby was fondled and caressed and wrapped in a fur for warmth

fresh shredded soft inner cedar bark was placed in the cradleboard

and the baby was returned to its familiar secure surroundings

TODDLERS WERE CAREFULLY GUIDED IN THE WAYS OF THE INDIANS

Instruction began early for Indian children on both sides of the Cascade Mountains

at an age when they were able to walk, all Indian toddlers were free to play

games developed needed skills and coordination

Physical punishment was very rare

though they might be rebuked, it was unacceptable for a child to be whipped or spanked

it was believed a child who was abused would likely grow up to abuse their children

Indians also believed punishment did more harm than good

and the child might choose to return to the land of babies

rather parents used praise, ridicule and fear to influence their children’s behavior

stories of evil spirits living nearby who would steal bad children were told

Quinault Indians regarded a child as being completely irresponsible up to age five

children younger than that were never punished

Toddlers stayed at home when their mothers had to work away from the village

grandparents provided attention and affection

Indian children became acquainted with their culture, morals, ideals and ethics

while the family was gathered together at night, often around a fire

Story tellers were usually grandfathers and old men but old women told good stories, too

toddlers heard long myths, legends and stories of their village

to illustrate practical lessons and point out what might happen to a disobedient child

Indians had no written language

toddlers discovered how their ancestors had learned all they knew

many of the stories involved animals in the days when they could still talk

children learned early of the frightening creatures who lived in the dark forests

toddlers learned how people came to be on earth

and the agreement with animals to become food

they learned of the traditions and ceremonies, songs, dances and rituals of the people

old people spoke to the child about the Personal Spirit (soul), Guardian Spirits,

Spirit World, and The Changer

CHILDHOOD TRAINING ENCOURAGED PRACTICAL SKILLS

Instructions to children were really just advice given by older people

girls, even when young, had a few chores they were to do for their mothers

but most of their time was their own to build little salmon traps and playhouses

mothers made cedar bark dolls for their daughters

boys were instructed by their fathers regarding what was required to become a man

as soon as they were able boys learned about men’s work

Coastal Indian fathers made model canoes for their sons to play with

to prepare the child for the responsibility of canoe ownership

boys were taught to exercise and ignore pain

games provided practice for needed life skills

watching skilled artisans and testing their own skills

was part of an Indian boy’s education

Children of the Plateau people received less attention from adults

as more of the family’s time was taken up meeting the requirements of life

children were expected to learn self-reliance at a very early age

Learning quickly was encouraged -- discipline usually was an appeal to the child’s pride

few restrictions were placed on the socialization of children

it was noted obedient children won the respect and approval of the rest of the villagers

while naughty children risked condemnation and contempt

flattery built pride in a job well done and Indian children, like most people,

were eager for the approval

BOTH GIRLS AND BOYS RECEIVE A SERIES OF NEW NAMES

At about age eight girls received a new name to replace their nickname

a celebration was provided by the parents in honor of the naming ceremony

At about age ten or twelve boys also received a new name and ceremony

When a Guardian Spirit had been received the event also resulted in a new name

Later in life if an Indian became distinguished in some regard

she or he would receive a new last name proclaiming the newly acquired prowess

Some Native Americans earned several names for themselves

PRACTICAL TRAINING FOR GIRLS BEGAN ABOUT AGE EIGHT

Girls were taught by women all of the tasks necessary to provide for everyone in the village

mothers taught girls to cook, clean, make baskets, blankets and clothes, do housework

and all of the other skills necessary to sustain life

girls were taught to be hospitable and to make good wives

older women showed how to dig roots, gather grasses and cedar bark and dry fish

attendance at “classes” was irregular

depending on what work the girls were expected to accomplish at home

but each girl attended lessons until she had learned at least the basic skills

in some villages completed handicraft articles were hung on bushes along popular trails

so they could be admired by the members of the village

families held ceremonies to celebrate the first roots and fruits gathered by their daughters

women of the household provided a feast which included the foods

the girls had gathered

girls served the guests, primarily relatives, but she was not permitted to eat any food

as a demonstration of her understanding that service is more important than self

some of the older guests spoke to the girl emphasizing the virtues of hard work

which leads to great success as an adult

AT PUBERTY GIRLS WERE ISOLATED UNTIL THEY WERE MARRIED

It was believed girls became possessed by a strong spirit that would harm the village

usually girls age twelve or thirteen were secluded in a hut placed some distance away

where they observed how to properly prepare food without offending the Spirit World

Coastal girls were to avoid all men with the exception of relatives until they were married

in some villages girls were secluded in a small compartment in the longhouse

where she was kept isolated -- sometimes for several years

she was allowed to go outside only at night

and then only in secrecy and accompanied by her mother or a slave

she did nothing at all during the day

her continued inactivity and seclusion made her weak and pale

eventually she was unable to do any physical task

these years of cramped-up sitting

sometimes resulted in a partial crippling of the girl’s legs

upper-class women often had difficulty walking as adults

these physicals problems were valued as marks of the ultimate aristocrat

this was just the kind of girl noble families sought for their sons

these girls were so hidden away that an aura of mystery surrounded them

which was an additional attraction for an eligible suitor

One Plateau Salish native group, the Sinkaietk of the upper Columbia River,

established a house used only by the girls of the village which served two purposes:

•it kept young girls away from the boys;

•it provided a place where girls could learn the skills useful for running a household

girls went there during the day accompanied by older women

old women taught them how to make bags, baskets, blankets, mats and twine

and to do bead and embroidery work

GUARDIAN SPIRIT QUEST MARKED THE CHILD’S ENTRY INTO ADULTHOOD

Every Coastal child had an advisor or guardian

who determined when the child was ready to acquire his or her Guardian Spirit

quest for a Guardian Sprit was usually undertaken in March or April

during stormy weather when the spirits surfaced and were easier to find

it was impossible to receive a Guardian Spirit without doing something personally

to acquire it

women could receive a Guardian Spirit as well as men

but these were less powerful spirits

as women were not physically strong enough to acquire a big spirit

Coastal people could receive the spirit of anything: animals, plants, even inanimate objects

boys and girls at about age thirteen went on a “Spirit Quest” to find their Guardian Spirit

the seeker journeyed into the forest at least five days journey from village

to a remote spot described by the advisor

before the child went out, the advisor set out a marker and told the child where to find it

and return with it to the village as proof the quest had been undertaken

Before setting out on the Spirit Quest the child must cleanse himself or herself outwardly

by rubbing their body with bark and nettles until blood removed the smell of grease

which was offensive to the spirits

it was also necessary for the seeker to cleanse himself or herself inwardly

very little would be eaten for several days before the quest began

and the seeker was given no provisions for use during the quest

a cedar belt was tightly wound around the waist so hunger would not be felt so keenly

While journeying on the Spirit Quest the seeker must remain awake

as spirits may appear at any time

to stay awake the child might dive into water, build piles of rocks, tend a fire at night

and play games with the spirits

camp was set up in the woods by the seeker at the location identified by the advisor

here a fire had to be built and tended to make sure the fire did not burn out

he or she had traveled several days without eating and was faint from hunger

from this place, the youth went out in every direction searching for a Guardian Spirit

far from friends and the village the seeker was filled with fear

woods were filled with unknown spirits and monsters heard of since early childhood

it was possible the young person might accidentally anger a spirit

When the Guardian Spirit appeared, it took the form of a vision

which sang and danced for the seeker

this spirit must be correctly identified and the spirit song and spirit dance must be learned

and the young person may be instructed only once

When these tasks were accomplished, Coastal native seekers returned to their village

but their Guardian Spirit would not remain permanently

rather it would make its presence known randomly or on special occasions

fear of committing an unspeakable and forbidden act that antagonized the Spirit World

restrained the seeker from cheating regarding their vision

Seeker began to test the Guardian Spirit to see if it had been correctly identified

if the child developed gifts and talents along the lines of the suspected spirit

the seeker became increasingly sure that that spirit’s aid had been acquired

FOR COASTAL PEOPLE ACQUIRING A GUARDIAN SPIRIT WAS KEY TO MATURING

Coastal seekers did not speak of the experiences encountered during their spirit quest

except to his or her mother or another trusted adult woman

who began to prepare a ceremonial costume representing the Guardian Spirit

women of the village collectively began to weave a long rope of inner cedar bark

Seeker’s Guardian Spirit Dance was the nearest thing to a religious ceremony

that natives experienced

on the selected day, the seeker’s family invited other villagers to a feast

to celebrate the young person’s finding a Guardian Spirit

child would enter the longhouse with his or her mother or other female relative

long rope woven of inner cedar bark by village women was tied to the seeker’s waist

older woman painted the seeker’s face black with soot and charcoal

to represent the child’s death

this child must die before the adult man or woman could exist

next the child dressed in a costume prepared by the child’s mother or another woman

to represent the suspected Guardian Spirit

if the costume was correct, the seeker would become possessed by the Guardian Spirit

he or she would burst from the building and run wildly around the village

friends and other children took turns running along behind holding the long rope

to keep the child from harm by running into a tree or boulder or off a cliff

during the dance other members of the village feasted

men sang their Spirit Songs and danced their Spirit Dances

to help the young person remain in contact with their Guardian Spirit

child continued to run and dance wildly for several hours until collapsing in exhaustion

while the young person was unconscious, the men met to discuss the performance

if the performance had been successful, when the child awakened

his or her face had been cleaned of the soot and charcoal

this represented the birth of a new adult

the child had crossed into adulthood with all of its rights and privileges

A new adult name was acquired by abstaining from food for several days

until the Guardian Spirit appeared in the youth’s dreams

as an animal, a bird, or some mysterious object

Sometimes two or more Spirit Quests were necessary to find the Guardian Spirit

on rare occurrences, the spirit was never found

in which case the seeker was always treated as an inferior in the village

COMING OF AGE FOR THE PLATEAU INDIANS WAS A KEY STEP IN MATURING

As on the Pacific coast, the Plateau Indians’ quest for the Guardian Spirit

that would provide a powerful ally to help and guide the individual throughout life

was a rite of passage conducted at about the same age as among the Coastal people

and at about the same time of year

quest for a Guardian Spirit among the Plateau people was limited to animal spirits

“Spirit Quest” to find a Guardian Spirit served as a method of leaving behind childhood

in the Interior spirit guidance was sought by all boys and perhaps one-third of the girls

Once a Plateau Indian received his or her Guardian Spirit the seeker returned to the village

and tried to forget the experience -- talking about the Spirit Quest was unacceptable

After several years, the Guardian Spirit might return and confirm its existence

when this occurred, the Indian became ill

during the illness, a Shaman was called who would reveal the true cause of the illness

the Shaman would help the patient remember the Spirit Song and Spirit Dance

after the spirit was correctly identified and the song remembered,

a ceremony was held to honor the acquiring of the Guardian Spirit

next Winter Ceremony would also see a performance of the song and dance

NEZ PERCE SPIRIT QUEST WAS UNDERTAKEN AT A YOUNG AGE

Every ten-year-old Nez Perce Indian was sent into the mountains to seek a Guardian Spirit

this sacred ritual was considered the most important undertaking in an individual’s life

To find the Guardian Spirit the child was instructed to climb one of the highest peaks

once at the top the seeker was to build a pile of stones and sit down beside it

all of seeker’s attention was to be focused on the purpose of the vigil

the seeker was not to eat or drink anything and was to try to stay awake

after three or four days alone in the wilderness the seeker usually fell into a fitful sleep

during which an animal spirit appeared and gave the child a name

this spirit taught the seeker a sacred song which must be learned

from then on the Guardian Spirit would protect the child from danger

and endow him or her with whatever skills or physical qualities

were appropriate to that particular spirit

MARRIAGE WAS A SIGIFICANT LIFE STEP FOR COASTAL YOUNG WOMEN

Marriages between neighboring villages were frequent

and was an extremely important event on the coast

brides were married as arranged by their parents at about age fourteen or fifteen

young women were taught to look on marriage with a rich man as their ultimate goal

young men married at sixteen or seventeen

among the slave-owning Salish natives marriages usually were arranged

by the groom’s parents -- but grooms usually had a voice their selection of his bride

Marriage was a contract between two families

which affected and involved far more than the couple

both sets of parents checked the prospective in-law’s character, social standing

and wealth

marriages were made to improve social and economic standing of the family

parents wanted their children to marry into the same class or higher

both families were extremely particular about the choice of partner for their child

prestige was an important factor in the match

among Chinook Indians marriage was especially seemly if both parties were flatheads

by mingling the best blood of the tribes, an aristocratic class was created on the coast

Young women were not always ostracized for becoming pregnant

if an unmarried woman became pregnant, she had to tell her family who the father was

if girl’s parents consented to the union, the son-in-law stayed with the bride’s family

thus demonstrating the acceptance of both families

if the expectant father was of a lower class and the girl insisted on staying with him

the bride’s father was shamed and might send them both away to live

if the girl’s parents vehemently objected to the union

the expectant father would have to pay a tribute to the girl’s parents

if he failed to pay the fine the expectant father might be killed by the girl’s family

COASTAL WEDDINGS INVOLVED A GREAT DEAL OF GIFT GIVING

Coastal weddings, particularly among wealthy and aristocratic families,

were always accompanied by many exchanges of reciprocal gifts

parents of the groom usually took the initiative

this giving of gifts was an exchange rather than a payment for the bride

common people who could not afford gifts were married by mutual agreement

but with no wedding ceremony

Wedding ceremonies among Salish people were very specific[[26]](#footnote-26)

young man’s family sent out a discreet proposal of marriage to the family of a young lady

in hope of gaining a positive response

if this proposal was found to be acceptable by the parents of the prospective bride

the groom’s father or some other close male relative made a formal marriage proposal

if assurances of acceptance of the proposal were made the young man and his family

set out in canoes loaded with gifts and paddled to the young woman’s village

when they arrived the door to the bride’s longhouse was always barred to them

then began a long and repetitious series of speeches praising both families

and stressing the desirability of the match

when the door was finally opened, negotiations immediately stalled

groom’s relatives and speakers departed leaving the young fellow alone

sitting on a pile of blankets inside the door

he sometimes had to sit there several days, nearly motionless, eating nothing

his prospective bride was nowhere to be seen

when the groom’s relatives returned there were more speeches

after each flattering speech the girl’s family presented the speaker with a blanket

but made no other comment

it was a matter of prestige for the family of the bride to be able to later boast

how difficult they had made it for the young man’s family

finally, an agreement to marry was reached

COASTAL NEWLY MARRIED COUPLES ESTABLISHED A PERMANENT RESIDENCE

Coastal society was patriarchal -- bride and groom moved in with the groom’s family

although there might be a short stay at the home of the bride first

After the marriage the groom’s blankets and mats became common property

of the husband and wife

however, his hunting and fishing gear remained the man’s property

whatever handicraft a woman had made was kept as her own

she could sell or exchange her artistic works and keep the returns for herself

Coastal Indians had plural marriages

if a man was rich enough having more than one wife was accepted

but in practice only a Shaman could afford more than two wives

additional wives were taken without ceremony

it was unnecessary for a man to desert his wife to secure another woman

plural wives had a separate individual fire in the longhouse

husbands usually preferred marrying the sisters of his first wife

achieving greater harmony with his in-laws and more consideration for his children

most business dealings were among family members

it was an advantage to have as large a family as possible

PLATEAU MARRIAGE CEREMONIES WERE NOT AS INVOLVED AS ON THE COAST

Plateau natives not have the abundance of material wealth to show off or give away

Inland tribes did not hold formal marriage ceremonies -- weddings were simple

during a ceremonial dance men and women at a dance formed two lines

facing each other

leaving his line the man approached a woman he desired

he placed a stick on her shoulder and danced by her side

if she refused him she threw the stick off and he had to fall back into the men’s line

if she allowed him to dance with the stick on her shoulder until the end of the dance

she had accepted him and they were married

elopements seldom occurred expect during bison hunting season

when everyone was busy with the hunt

in this case the young man usually chose his bride and simply persuaded the girl

to come to his father’s camp and remain there

they were then regarded as married

sometimes the girl’s parents would persuade a young man to stay in their camp

with their daughter for a few days -- this also was considered a marriage

if an unmarried young woman gave birth to a baby, it was a disgrace to her family

if the father was known, she became his wife

COASTAL AND PLATEAU COUPLES OCCASIONALLY SUFFERED MARITAL STRIFE

Problems such as spouse abuse were resolved by the victim’s family

in the event of mistreatment of the bride her family would seek vengeance

a wife, for instance, might inform her brother, father, or other trusted male relative

of the conditions under which she suffered

a visit to her husband would result in a stern warning to stop the abuse

further hostile action by the groom could result in the Shaman of the wife’s family

declaring war on the husband and his family

more usually the bride’s family hired a Shaman to inflict an evil spirit

on the abusive husband

this evil spirit would not be removed until a promise to reform was delivered

DIVORCE OCCURRED ONLY RARELY IN COASTAL AND PLATEAU MARRIAGE

Husbands did not usually leave their wives -- plural marriages were acceptable

if a man thought his wife had been unfaithful[[27]](#footnote-27)

he was allowed to clip off the tip of her nose and ears to make her forever unattractive

in the case of adultery, the guilty man was most likely to be killed by the angry husband

although the adulterer often bought himself off with gifts to the husband

when rape occurred, the punishment for the male was death or marriage to his victim

Divorce was simple but uncommon because of the complications it created

disagreements could sometimes be resolved peaceably

however, if the husband abandoned his family or he sent his wife to her parent’s home

it created a vast number of complications for both the husband’s and wife’s families

all of the bridal gifts had to be returned to the bride’s father

these gifts, of course, had been further distributed to friends and relatives

and therefore were difficult to get back

sometimes the wife would choose to return to her parent’s home

when a woman left her husband, the husband retained all of their property

but a Shaman could be called upon to cast a spell on the husband

OLD AGE WAS A HAPPY TIME FOR NATIVE AMERICANS

Elderly people were revered for their knowledge and skills and their service to the village

older natives were free of the drudgery of daily tasks taken over by the next generation

and, of course, there were the village children and their own grandchildren to care for

Looking after, educating and training these children provided meaning and purpose to life

grandparents repeated the legends and stories of the village for the children

to provide a link with the past, the children’s role in the future and the Spirit World

AS DEATH NEARED PERSONAL ITEMS WERE GIVEN AWAY

Normally among the Indians, death was anticipated and prepared for

when an Indian could no longer work personal property and slaves were given away

a man’s canoes and hunting dogs were given to his son or other relative

a woman’s blankets, baskets and other works of art

were given to her children or grandchildren

Occasionally, a person could die and come back to life again in a few days

especially with the assistance of a very powerful Shaman

AT DEATH THE PERSONAL SPIRIT (SOUL) WENT TO THE LAND OF THE DEAD

Indians did not believe in heaven or hell -- no devils or angels existed for them

human life was thought to follow much the same pattern as the lives of other animals

each species had a land of its own where they would return at death

Indians universally believed in the existence of a Personal Spirit or soul

which at death became a ghost that followed the sun into the “Land of the Dead”

where there was comfort, friends, family and plenty to eat

Ghosts traveled by one of two paths that led to the Land of the Dead

a short path went to the left and the longer path went to the right

left route was taken by those who died suddenly

long path was followed by someone who had been sick for a long time

two rivers had to be crossed on the way to the Land of the Dead

first river, which was very swift, was bridged by a fallen tree

second river was approached from the East where the ghost arrived at a low bank

Land of the Dead lay across the second river to the West beyond a high bank

this river had to be crossed in a canoe

LAND OF THE DEAD WAS MUCH LIKE LIFE ON EARTH

Ghosts in the Land of the Dead lived the same kind of lives as people on Earth

babies returned to a kind of “Land of Babies” where they were very happy

houses in the Land of the Dead were the same as on Earth

men people hunted and fished and women produced wonderful works of art

dead of various tribes and villages had separate places in the Land of the Dead

however, when it was low tide on earth it was high tide in the land of the ghosts

It was a concern that the Personal Spirit (soul) could become lonely in the Land of the Dead

ghosts could return to Earth to haunt the longhouses or village where they had lived

and to complete unfinished business, or to visit friends and family

or to retrieve some treasured possession of great significance left behind

if a ghost wanted something it could not take with them at death,

it lingered around the longhouse but only came out at night

and never when the moon was shining

to discourage ghosts from returning a large fire was built

the person’s remaining property was burned to allow the spirit of those possessions

to travel to the Land of the Dead

occasionally slaves might be sacrificed to prevent the possibility of loneliness

if death had occurred in a longhouse, that house was destroyed or moved

even if it was a large house occupied by many families

Families did not invite ghosts to return because they were of no further use

and the village was better left alone

in contrast however, the spirits of babies, whales and salmon were welcome as guests

every inducement was made to recall them back to the village and to please them

FUNERAL SERVICES WERE TO PROTECT THE PERSONAL SPIRIT OF THE DESEASED

Funeral services were dedicated to speed the Personal Spirit (soul) to the Land of the Dead

and to provide the ghost a welcome there upon its arrival

Funeral services also were to protect those remaining from ghosts with unfinished business

and from spirits that had become evil due to some abuse or insult inflicted by the living

Funerals were conducted by an undertaker who was usually a Shaman

who received a fee for attending to the burial

Shamans eulogized the deceased and laid the ghost to rest

Chief mourners, sometimes paid professionals, cut their hair short as a sign of mourning

if the deceased was a person of great importance, the entire village cut their hair

after the death services, the chief mourners had to be ceremonially cleansed

to remove the influence of the deceased person’s ghost

COASTAL NATIVE BURIAL CUSTOMS VARIED BY VILLAGE AND STATUS

Usually the body, dressed in formal clothing, was wrapped in skins, blankets and mats

and was placed in its final resting place with the head toward the West

strings of shell money were put on a wealthy person

some of the most treasured possessions of the deceased

were broken into small pieces, burned or destroyed and placed with the body

to allow that object’s spirit to accompany the deceased to the Land of the Dead

Coastal Natives burial customs took many forms which varied from village to village

along Puget Sound, the Indians spent much of their lives in canoes

“burial” usually was above ground when a canoe was used as a coffin

both women and men were placed in their own canoe

canoe and boxes of personal possessions were raised off the ground

and lashed to branches high in a tree

or placed on a scaffold on posts out of the reach of predatory animals

bottom of the canoe was covered with cedar shakes

holes were bored in the bottom to let rain water out

after a year some villages re-buried the remains

under the canoe or in a family cemetery

some Coastal Indians placed the remains in a basket or cedar box rather than in a canoe

One cemetery located on a high, isolated cliff on the Columbia River West of Longview

was named Mount Coffin

another, a rocky islet close to the Oregon shore, was known as Coffin Rock

BURIAL OF COASTAL LOWER CLASSES WAS IN FORMAL

Slaves or persons without importance in the community were disposed of without ceremony

sometimes the deceased was laid on a platform built in a tree as a canoe was too costly

or the body was placed in crevices, rocks, or huts with gabled roofs

Very poor slaves could be thrown in a hole and covered with Earth

or sometimes they were simply placed or left in an unfrequented location in the woods

PLATEAU NATIVE BURIAL CUSTOMS VARIED GREATLY

Plateau Indians believed the dead went to a land in the sky

but if the burial ceremony was not properly followed,

the Personal Spirit (soul) would roam the Earth as a ghost

disposal of the dead was convenient for the inland natives

graves or mounds of rock were used to safeguard the remains from predatory animals

Plateau natives took advantage of rock slides and gravel banks

the body was placed in a basket or box and left at the base of a landslide

rocks above were loosened which caused a landslide to cascade down on the remains

sometimes their dead were buried in graves in a pit -- matting covered the floor

vertical cedar planks were placed around the sides of the pit to hold back the earth

deceased’s body and personal possessions were placed in the grave

these were covered with matting and the grave was filled with Earth

stones were placed on top of the grave

mourners burned the projecting pieces of vertical cedar planking at ground level

it did not take long for the desert wind and sand to conceal the grave completely

some Interior Indians used a circular grave three to five feet deep

which was covered by a layer of poles on which stones were heaped

ornaments and other property were buried with the dead

after they became available to Plateau people, horses were often killed over the grave

Columbia River Plateau Indians used low knolls deposited by the wind as burial places

wind soon removed all scent and concealed the location of the grave from predators

Lower Columbia Indians burial customs revolved around an island in the Columbia River

called “memaloose” (Cayuse for death) or death island that served as a burial site

(the largest island below The Dalles, Oregon is still known as Memaloose Island)

Wishrams, a Chinook group living at The Dalles, were the only natives of the Plateau[[28]](#footnote-28)

to use low hut-like structures about ten feet wide and six feet high

made of poles, slabs of wood and bark with a shed roof

constructed over a shallow pit on islands in the Columbia River

bodies piled to a height of three or four feet were laid with heads toward the West

carved wooden images were sometimes set up around the hut

these structures and their contents were identified by Lewis and Clark (1805)

these graveyards with their ghostly trophies were a grim sight for the explorers

on one island they counted thirteen burial huts and named it “Sepulcher Island”[[29]](#footnote-29)

other Chinook Indians had various methods of disposing of the body of the deceased

usually the remains were wrapped in a blanket -- often in a sitting position

some tribes used burial canoes raised on a scaffold atop cross pieces laid on four posts

the canoe was roped into place on the scaffold or tied into a tree with hazel switches

often the burial canoe was covered with another canoe

other times the burial canoe was set under the trees in the forest

and a shed built covering the canoe and its body

when a canoe was not used, the body was wrapped in a blanket

and laid on a scaffold about three feet above the ground

over the scaffold was constructed a wooden shed with pitch or gable roof

no carvings or painting were placed on the grave shed

instead, a ceremonial stick which had been used by the deceased in spirit dancing

was often set beside the grave

AFTER DEATH NATIVE CUSTOM PROVIDED FOR THE SPOUSE OF THE DECEASED

Widows frequently married their former husband’s brother or cousin

if the widow did not marry one her husband’s relatives

she returned to her childhood home with her children

after a few years she could marry into another family

Widowers allowed several years to elapse after the death of his wife before remarrying

often widowers married his deceased wife’s sister

to assure his children would be well looked after

MENTION OF THE NAME OF THE DEAD WAS A SERIOUS CRIME

For a specific number of years after death the living disassociated themselves from the dead

because just saying the name of the dead could beckon the ghost back to Earth

deceased person was always referred to as the relative of a living person

if the name of the dead was accidentally mentioned

the offender had to pay the relatives of the deceased

Indians never gave a dead person’s name to the living until after several years had passed

PLATEAU INDIANS ACQUIRE THE HORSE IN THE EARLY 1700s

Horses were brought to North America by Christopher Columbus

during his second expedition -- 1493

Later arriving Spanish conquistadors (soldiers) also brought horses with them

when a Spanish conquistador died his horses were allowed to roam free

over the following centuries wild herds of horses migrated north

or were driven north by Indians who captured them for their use as pack animals

Horses arrived in the Pacific Northwest in approximately 1710

first Plateau Indians to acquire the horse were reported to be Shoshone (or Snake) Indians

who lived along the Snake River and its tributaries

Shoshone Indians became the distributor of horses to their neighboring tribes

CAYUSE INDIANS ACQUIRE THE HORSE

Cayuse Indians were the first of the Plateau people to own large numbers of horses

according Indian oral tradition Cayuse scouts approached a group of Shoshone Indians

on a tributary of the Snake River

these scouts were bewildered to see their enemies riding on large deer or elk

even more confusing, the prints left by these animals were not split like deer or elk

but rather were round and solid

Cayuse scouts arranged a truce to trade for some of these creatures

Cayuse natives returned to their village nearly naked

but accompanied by a mare and a stallion

Cayuse name remains permanently attached to these tough, little horses

HORSES REVOLUTIONIZED THE LIVES OF CAYUSE INDIANS

Horses began to be used by Indians as pack animals

they became the most frequently used method of travel

for these people and their possessions

no longer restricted to what they could carry or what their dogs could pull,

Cayuse Indians moved into new areas to hunt, trade, fight and capture slaves

they traveled across the Rocky Mountains as far east as the Great Plains

and south as far as California

Cayuse horse herds rapidly multiplied as a result of skillful breeding and raids on other tribes

Cayuse who owned fifteen to twenty horses was considered poor

wealthy families controlled horse herds of 2,000 or more by the early 1800s

Cayuse natives began to take on the role of middlemen in the increasingly extensive trade

between the Indians of the Great Plains and those of the Pacific Coast

they adopted elements of Plains Indian culture into their own

acquiring the Plains natives’ style of clothing and personal ornamentation,

they learned new methods of hunting and new ways of packing and transporting goods

conical teepees covered with buffalo hides were added to their housing options

new concept of selecting a chief based on his skills as a warrior came from Plains Indians

NEZ PERCE INDIANS DEVELOP THEIR OWN BREED OF HORSES

Nez Perce Indians acquired horses from the Shoshone natives

Nez Perce land was better-suited to raising horses than that of the Shoshones

it was better protected from Indian raiding parties trying to add to their own herds

Nez Perce tribesmen became especially sophisticated and excellent horsemen

many historians believe the Nez Perce were the first to selectively improve their horses

they attained heavier animals brought from Mexican

and Spanish ranches in California

they bred horses to develop specific traits such as intelligence, speed and courage

by keeping the best and trading away those that were less desirable

Nez Perce developed the spotted coats unique to their breed

their horses became lean, long-necked, clean-limbed animals

that featured narrower shoulders and hindquarters and a longer back

their horses were fast with a smooth-running gait and remarkable endurance

they also were excellent jumpers

Nez Perce horses were developed for specific tasks such as tribal horses suitable for trade,

family horses, race horses, hunting and war horses

Nez Perce horse herds multiplied into the thousands -- their prized stock was envied

these Indians counted their wealth in horses -- some chiefs owned 4,000 to 6,000

these vast herds were protected by methods later adopted by stockmen

large herds were divided and placed on several ranges with riders watching over them

occasionally the herd was rounded up

Nez Perce became known as a most affluent of the Plateau tribes

PLATEAU INDIANS DEVELOPED THEIR OWN RIDING EQUIPMENT

Plateau people used the materials readily available to control their horses while riding

bridles were made by twisting horsehair into rope that was tied around horse’s lower jaw

saddles were made of a pad of buckskin stuffed with horsehair

saddle cinch was placed under the horse’s belly to hold the saddle on the horse

cinch was made of horsehair and strips of rawhide

stirrups were made of wood covered with elk or buckskin applied wet

this was made durable and stretched tight by drying

Women rode well and took part in horse races

women’s wooden riding saddles had a high pommel in the front and the back

front pommel had a prong on which to hang the rider’s possessions

PLATEAU INDIANS’ NOMADIC LIFE COVERED A FAR-RANGING AREA

Horses gave the Interior natives the means to move quickly and easily

this greater mobility made life a great deal easier – these Indians became more nomadic

People ranged over a very large area as they followed the food supply in seasonal migrations

spring and summer were spent along the rivers fishing and socializing

and in the hills gathering roots, berries and plants

trading among Plateau tribes and even with Coastal villagers became more extensive

native gatherings and trade fairs were more easily reached

these became increasingly frequent and better attended

fall and winter were spent in protected locations where game could be taken as food

Some tribes joined the Plains Indians in buffalo hunts on the Great Plains

Cayuse, Nez Perce, Spokanes and others conducted their own great buffalo hunts

bison hunts usually involved collisions with the bloodthirsty Blackfoot Indians

battles were usually proceeded by a war dance to assure help from the Spirit World

as a result of these contacts the culture of the Plains people was further adopted

Plateau Indians began to live in lodges instead of huts

PLATEAU INDIANS BECAME EXPERT AT HUNTING WITH HORSES

Plateau people could hunt with bow and arrows by stalking or running game with horses

they rode past the victim on the right side and shot an arrow into the animal’s heart

although a lance was sometimes used

when flint-lock muskets became available to Indians as a by-product of trade

hunters acquired remarkable skill in reloading while riding at full speed

hunters dropped a charge of powder from the powder horn into his palm

then into the muzzle of the musket

next a musket ball was taken from the supply carried in the hunter’s mouth

finally, the charge was tamped tightly with a ramrod

PLATEAU PEOPLE WERE NORE WARLIKE THAN NATIVES ALONG THE COAST

Wars were fought to seize hunting lands or root and berry fields controlled by other tribes

and, of course, to steal horses

but major fishing grounds were neutral sites

fighting was not allowed while the fish were running

War dances were inter-tribal because of alliances of tribes against common enemies

after the arrival of the horse Plateau war rituals were borrowed from the Plains Indians[[30]](#footnote-30)

several kinds of dances were associated with war:

•parade dance to gather recruits for battle;

•dance of the warriors to seek spirit protection;

•dance of the women during the absence of the war party;

•dance of the returning warriors;

•victory dance in their home camp

Like Plains Indians, a Flathead and Nez Perce man’s war record fixed his social position[[31]](#footnote-31)

which was based on specific acts of bravery in the face of the enemy called “coups”

risk of injury or death was required to count as a coup

any blow struck against the enemy counted as a coup,

but the most prestigious acts included touching an enemy warrior

with the hand, bow, or with a coup stick -- then escaping unharmed

touching the first enemy to die in battle or touching the enemy’s defensive works

also counted as coup

stealing an enemy’s weapons or horses tied up to his lodge in camp counted

escaping unharmed while collecting coup was considered a higher honor

than being wounded in the attempt

if a warrior was wounded in the attempt, he was required to paint the coup feather red

as an indication of a lesser achievement

coups were indicated by notches on a coup stick only by the Flathead and Nez Perce

on special occasions braves related their successes by “counting coups”

ARRIVAL OF EUROPEANS CHANGED THE LIVES OF NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS

East coast Indians were responsible to some extent for many concepts of American freedom

Indians highly valued **“all of those things which got attached to the Bill of Rights”[[32]](#footnote-32)**

they had already developed the traditions of public-meetings, free speech and democracy

Native Americans also contributed food, vocabulary and place names to the white culture

from earliest colonial times

many white and black newcomers chose to live an Indian lifestyle

frontiersmen were quite taken by the extent to which Indians enjoyed freedom

as individuals[[33]](#footnote-33)

WHITE TRADERS AND EXPLORERS CHANGED THE INDIANS OF THE NORTHWEST Arrival of early sea otter traders introduced new tools to the Indian culture

metal tools made it easier to make objects from stone, wood and bone

canoe making became easier with axes and hatchets although the old designs remained

it took less time and effort to fall a tree and shape the cedar log

because of this it became possible for more Indians to own canoes

most of the art works displayed in museums today were made after fir traders arrived

Later arriving beaver traders further changed the Indian way of life

ironically, to Native American eyes whites were the nomads

native economy changed from hunter-gatherers to suppliers of beaver and animal pelts

Indians became increasingly dependent on the trade goods supplied to them

CHINOOK JARGON EXPANDED TO INLCUDE THE LANGUAGE OF EUROPEANS

Native trade language of “Chinook Jargon” was first reported by Captain George Vancouver

when he visited Grays Harbor -- 1792

Chinook and Salish languages were too difficult to pronounce for whites to use successfully

with the coming of sea traders Spanish, English and Russian words

were added to the native trade vocabulary

later arrival of land traders added French vocabulary to the mix

as European languages became enmeshed with Chinook and Nootka

a new trade language that kept the name Chinook Jargon was the result

Chinook Jargon made communication possible among Indian peoples and white traders alike

however, Chinook Jargon eventually destroyed the use of many ancient native tongues

SOCIAL MORALITY FOR COASTAL AND PLATEAU INDIANS WAS ALTERED

Development of commercialized relations with white trappers and traders

caused Coastal natives to relax their social restraints

sea otter seeking mariners and later fur traders disrupted natives’ moral convictions

parents sometimes traded their daughters and husbands their wives for wealth

during the summer Indian women camped near trading posts and forts

when fur trading brigades arrived at a locale, native women swarmed in

boat-loads of women appeared and forced their intentions on the whites

it became difficult to keep fur company employees from Indian huts

in addition to airborne diseases such as measles and whooping cough

venereal diseases spread unchecked among the natives who lacked any immunity

adult and infant death rates increased at a terrible rate as epidemics ran rampant

Chinook natives were reduced from 15,000 when maritime traders first arrived (1792)

to about 300 in (1854)

LEWIS AND CLARK CROSS THE CONTINENT TO THE PACIFIC COAST

Lewis and Clark’s “Core of Discovery” gave Plateau Indians their first contact with whites

this expedition camped with the Cayuse people

at the mouth of the Walla Walla River -- late October 1805

Core of Discovery members reached the Pacific coast later that same month

Lewis and Clark’s expedition again visited with the Cayuse people -- June 6, 1806

as they returned overland to the east coast

Cayuse were curious about the explorers and were particularly interested in their weapons

there were practical reasons for being receptive to these powerful strangers

while their horse herds had multiplied, they themselves remained at about 500 people

access to new weapons could assure Cayuse dominance over other Plateau tribes

new trade goods also opened grand new opportunities for economic expansion

Plateau Indians were more fortunate than the Indians of the Pacific coast

after the arrival of Lewis and Clark’s “Core of Discovery” the primary contact

with white strangers was with fur traders and half-breeds who took Indian wives

next major contact was with Christian missionaries

in the interior of the United States airborne and venereal diseases were not as rampant

as they were along the Pacific coast which was visited by sea traders

PLATEAU NATIVES SOUGHT ADVANCED TECHNOLOGIES

After contact with the white culture, Plateau Indians actively sought out missionaries

two native delegations, primarily Nez Perce, journeyed east to request missionaries

to instruct them in reading and writing

however, rather than the white man’s religion they were interested in acquiring

“better medicine” to increase their personal power and tribal prestige

First attempt by whites to communicate with the Indians in their native language

was undertaken by Christian missionary Rev. Henry Spalding at Lapwai Mission -- 1837

INDIANS AND WHITES HELD DIFFERING VIEWS REGARDING TRADE[[34]](#footnote-34)

Hostility between the Indians and settlers who followed the traders and trappers arose

pioneers were primarily farmers who did not enjoy trade fairs

and endless dickering for bargains

which among the native people bargaining was a basic part of conducting trade

for Indians, trade in addition to being profitable was just plain fun

it provided an exciting opportunity to visit with other people

NATIVE AMERICANS ARE DEFEATED IN THE WAR FOR CULTURAL DOMINATION

Arrival of pioneers and soldiers destroyed the life known to the Costal and Plateau Indians

traders and trappers valued the skills and expertise of the natives, but later arrivals did not

instead they brought new diseases, religions, mores and technologies

to the people who stood in the way of their effort to develop farming

as the new way of life

Indian villages and tribes were never able to organize close alliances

to work together in opposition to the white invasion

even uncoordinated action by village and tribe members was seldom achieved

Treaties written of 1854 and 1855 forced Indians to change their way of life

to conform to the demands of the new cultures imposed upon them

To complicate the detailed and confusing legal precedents imposed by the treaties

Washington Territory Governor Isaac Stevens insisted they be written in Chinook Jargon

which was developed as a trade language composed of Indian and European words

legal concepts were far beyond the vocabulary available in the trade language

this appears odd as almost all Pacific Northwest Indians spoke adequate English

Indians, struggled to keep their traditional way of life

for instance, after the arrival of the pioneer immigration,

Nez Perce bought foot-sore but well-bred horses

that were used to further improve their herds

whites named the beautifully spotted horses “Appaloosa” in the 1870s

from three words: “a Palouse horse”[[35]](#footnote-35)

Appaloosa horses were taken away from the Nez Perce Tribe in 1877

when the last of a band of Nez Perce fleeing from United States jurisdiction

were surrounded by the U.S. Cavalry along the Canadian border

and they were forced to surrender

remaining Nez Perce horses were spread across the West to Indians and whites alike

NATIVE ART CONTINUES TO DISPLAY THE RICHNESS OF INDIAN CULTURE

Many Indian traditions and art forms still survive as tributes to native cleverness and skill

traditions and art forms of Northwest people are currently experiencing a positive revival

traditional items such as clothing, bags and baskets and other items are being made

woodworking continues to be an important cultural activity for Coastal people today

although some knowledge of the traditional arts has been lost

practicing those skills which remain continues to be an important part of Indian life

mothers and grandmothers decorate children’s costumes for celebrations and dances

beaded items, such as drums, woven bags and mats and other crafts are used

in traditional celebrations and for special occasions such as the Spirit Dance

native carvings continue to provide beautiful and fanciful art objects of great merit

UNITED STATE GOVERNMENT SIGNS TREATIES WITH NATIVE AMERICANS

President George Washington’s new nation was surrounded by enemies

creation of the new nation had been ratified by a treaty with Great Britain

Treaty of Paris ending the American Revolution was signed -- September 3, 1783

but the boundaries of the United States remained in doubt

by definition a treaty is an agreement under international law

entered into by sovereign states and international organizations

when the architects of the American government created the U.S. Constitution,

they clearly recognized that treaties along with the Constitution itself

are the supreme law of the land

Indian people and Indian country loomed as a large threat that challenged national growth George Washington’s Administration signed its first Indian Treaty -- August 3, 1795

with the Shawnee, Miami, Ottawa, Chippewa, Iroquois, Sauk and Fox

following the natives’ loss at the Battle of Fallen Timbers a year earlier

Washington dealt with Indians as foreign nations rather than as domestic subjects

primary goal of Washington’s Indian policy was to acquire Indian lands

in that he succeeded

his second goal, of far less importance to Washington and his government,

was to establish just policies for dealings with Indian people

Because treaties recognized Indians as living in independent nations

recognized Indian tribes have a government-to-government relationship with the U.S.

this tribal sovereignty assures certain federal benefits, services and protections

are maintained

this tribal sovereignty recognizes tribes have the right:

•to form their own government,

•to exclude people from tribal land,

• to make and enforce their own civil and criminal laws,

• to determine tribal membership, tax,

•to zone their land,

•to license and regulate activities within their jurisdiction

furthermore, federally recognized tribes possess both the right and the authority

to regulate activities on their lands independently from state government control

they can enact and enforce stricter or more lenient laws and regulations

that differ from the laws of the state that surrounds their reservation

states have no authority over tribal governments

except when that control is expressly authorized by Congress

CURRENT NATIVE AMERICAN POPULATION FACES DIFFICULT CHALLENGES

Approximately 124,000 Indians live in present-day Washington State

they are divided into five major language groups

and twenty-nine federally recognized tribes

Recognition status is granted by treaties, acts of Congress, presidential executive orders,

and other federal administrative actions, or federal court decisions

Each federally recognized tribe has its own reservation

and each is eligible for funding and services from the Bureau of Indian Affairs

Recent laws have been enacted in the United States and Canada

which provide Coastal and Plateau Indians a voice in their own dealings

In addition to U.S. citizenship rights, members of recognized tribes possess“special”rights

these are based on treaties and other agreements between their tribe and the United States

these additional rights are to compensate for their collective loss of land and resources

these rights are protected by the United States and Canadian governments

# B.C.E.-1499

ROMAN EMPIRE UNITES EUROPE AND THE MIDDLE EAST

City of Rome was founded -- 753 BCE

Roman Empire under various rulers expanded to surround the Mediterranean Sea

it extended across all of continental Europe much of England, parts of the Middle East

and North Africa north of the (Sahara Desert)

(BCE: Before the Common Era -- that is before the year 1 CE [Common Era]

because time is sometimes depicted as a line, BCE years become larger as you go back

that is, [500 BCE] is 400 years *before* [100 BCE])

EARLY VOYAGES OF DISCOVERY TO THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

Afro-Phoenicians sailings from Egypt as early as 750 BCE

may have reached (today’s Mexico)[[36]](#footnote-36)

colossal heads of basalt stone that represented realistic portraits of West Africans

dating far back in time stand along the eastern coast of (Mexico)

enormous effort was necessary to quarry the basalt blocks weighing ten to forty tons

and move them seventy-five miles to sculpt them into heads six to ten feet tall

at about the same time, Native Americans created small ceramic and stone sculptures

of Caucasoid and Negroid faces

other evidence exists to suggest transatlantic communication including weaving looms

and strains of American cotton identical to north African cotton

Mediterranean powers Egypt and Phoenicia sailed as far as Ireland and England -- 600 BCE

they may have reached the Atlantic Ocean island of Madeira (one of the Canary Islands)

and the islands of the Azores off the coast of West Africa

EARLY EUROPEAN AND AFRICAN VOYAGES TO THE NEW WORLD

There are a great number of historic resources that indicated early cultural exchanges

between the “old world” and the “new”:

oral histories, written records, cultural similarities, linguistic changes, pottery, human blood types, archaeological dating and plant migrations

ancient Roman coins have turned up all over the Americas

leading some archaeologists to conclude Roman sailors visited the “New World”

Ancient Arab historical sources provide information

regarding extensive Atlantic Ocean navigation

(thousands of years before Christopher Columbus “discovered” the New World [1492])

TRADE EXPANDS WITHIN CHINA

Merchants, shippers, camel drivers and sea captains extended and strengthened

trade routes across Eurasia along “silk roads,” reaching to the Mediterranean

and Black seas and the Indian Ocean between 300 BCE and 300 BCE

Trade within the Chinese empire grew under the Han Dynasty -- 222 BCE-202 BCE

caravans from the interior of China carried commodities to its western boundaries

Central Asian tribes attacked caravans hoping to capture valuable commodities

as a result, the Chinese Han Dynasty extended military defenses further into Central Asia

to protect the trade caravans

Prosperous as it was, the “Silk Road” was influenced by local political developments

a stable government assured smooth trade on the road

RISE OF CITIES IN EUROPE AND ASIA

Cities grew size and multiplied in number partly because they developed

increasingly strong commercial ties with one another

sometimes across long distances

Two of the biggest cities were Rome and Luoyang, China about 100 BCE

most cities were multifunctional, serving as centers of government, religion, trade,

manufacturing, education or artistic centers

cities, such as Rome and Alexandria (Egypt) accomplished all of these functions

other cities had more specialized purposes

towns of the Mediterranean coast and Eurasia

chiefly transshipped goods along routes of trade

CHINESE TRADE EXPANDS INTO EUROPE

Route of the Silk Road grew with the rise of the Roman Empire

Roman leaders linked with the imperial court of China -- 200 CE (Common Era)

trade was conducted by middlemen who belonged to neither of the two empires

only the extreme ends of trade route were managed by Roman and Chinese merchants

Chinese inventions such as gunpowder and paper first travelled to Europe

along the Silk Road as did a growing assortment of other products

Europeans shipped cosmetics, silver, gold, amber, ivory, carpets, perfume and ceramics

gathered in Europe, Central Asia, Arabia and Africa to the Chinese

EAST-WEST TRADE COMES TO AN END

Fall of the Han dynasty caused Chinese trade and the Silk Road to decline -- 220 CE-280 CE

China was thrown into chaos -- reunifying the nation seemed impossible

warring clans, political murders, foreign invaders all kept China in turmoil

(for the next 400 years)

ROMAN EMPIRE IS DIVIDED INTO HALVES

Roman Emperor Diocletian realized the empire was too large of a single ruler

he divided the empire into two parts -- 285 CE (Common Era -- after the year 1 CE)

he kept the wealthier eastern portion for himself

Eastern Roman Empire encompassed extremely wealthy provinces including

most of the Aegean Sea, Asia Minor (Anatolia), Egypt

and portions of North Africa

western portion of the Roman Empire (Europe) was placed under military rule

Civil war broke out in both portions of the Roman Empire -- 306 CE

Eastern Roman Emperor Constantine reunited the old Roman Empire under his control

and became the first Christian Emperor of the empire -- 313 CE

he founded a new capital city, Constantinople (Byzantium) -- 324 CE

and moved from Rome to the eastern city

Constantine planned to give a portion of the Roman Empire to each of his three sons

however, the great Roman emperor died -- 337 CE

Conflict again broke out in the Roman Empire and it was once again divided in two

Western Roman Empire and Eastern Roman Empire

ANCIENT CHINESE TEXTS DESCRIBE A VOYAGE TO THE EAST

Hwui Shan, a Buddhist missionary from Afghanistan, came to China as a young man

about 450 CE

this was a period of great expansion for Buddhism as zealous monks

journeyed to far off regions to share their evangelical fervor

Hwui Shan and four fellow priests chose a much different route than other missionaries

they set sail to the east of China and crossed the Yellow Sea

to an island he called “Jesso” (Japan) -- 499 CE

Hwui Shan traveled along the Kurlie islands (between Japan and the Kamchatka Peninsula)

until he reached Kamchatka then cross the North Pacific Ocean to the Aleutian Islands

which he identified as the **“land of the marked bodies”**[[37]](#footnote-37)

he commented on the three lines painted on men’s faces to designate rank

(this was later confirmed by Alexander Mackenzie [1789])

he was pleased by the friendliness of these people

in the **“Great Han Country”[[38]](#footnote-38)** (Alaska) Hwui Shan stopped

to observe the customs of the natives

he went southward past the “Middle Kingdom”

(British Columbia, Washington and Oregon)

to **“Fu-Sang”[[39]](#footnote-39)** (Baja California) which he described: **“[Fu-Sang] was situated twice ten thousand *li* [Chinese distance] or more to the east of the Great Han Country. That land is also situated at the east of the Middle Kingdom. That region has many Fu-Sang trees [mythical mulberry tree of life], and it is from these trees that the country derives its name... Their first sprouts are like those of the bamboo. The people of the country eat them and the fruit, which is [formed] like a pear but of a reddish colour. They spin thread from their bark, from which they make cloth....”[[40]](#footnote-40)**

eventually Hwui Shan landed in (today’s Mexico)

where he stayed to learn the culture of its people

Hwui Shan had a habit of describing in minute detail things peculiar to a country or people

when Hui Shen returned to China, he reported his findings to the Emperor

and official historians who included Hwui Shan’s report in their state records

he described finding tool manufacturing people living collectively in tribes and villages

(these are characteristics of what is known as the “Bronze Age” for their use of metal)

Hwui Shan’s story abounds with proofs of accuracy as he cites many American customs

WAS THE DISCOVERY OF HWUI SHAN POSSIBLE?

From China to Mexico it is never more than 200 miles from land point to land point

this distance was easily covered by the most primitive craft of the time

Strong warm Japan Current follows the exact route from China to North America

that was described by Hwui Shan

Japanese Current is so strong that a disabled boat

could not avoid arriving off North America

(modern *Ryo Yei Maru* -- eighty-five-foot, 100-ton fishing schooner

from Miaski, Japan left her home port a on fishing cruise [December 5, 1926]

almost a year later with only two bodies remaining of the crew of twelve

she was sighted off Cape Flattery by freighter *Margaret Dollar*

*Ryo Yei Maru* was towed to Port Townsend, Washington

ship’s log revealed engine trouble developed a few days after sailing

she was caught in a typhoon and her long drift began)

(Japan suffered a devastating earthquake and tsunami [large ocean wave]

that claimed nearly 16,000 lives, injured about 6,000 people and destroyed

or damaged countless buildings and property [March 11, 2011]

this tsunami also swept about five million tons of debris into the Pacific Ocean

while an estimated seventy percent of the debris sank near Japan’s shore,

the remainder was dispersed throughout the northern Pacific Ocean

some of it made its way to Canadian and U.S. shores -- including Washington

mainly in the form of Styrofoam, plastic, treated wood and light bulbs

all carried across the Pacific Ocean by the Japanese Current)

Generally, scholars accept Hwui Shan’s visit as historic fact

primary debate is now focused on the significance of his visit

in fact, Asians did not arrive regularly and this voyage had little impact on China

while his visit seems of little importance

Hwui Shan may have greatly influenced the natives of the Pacific Coast

changing their lives in innumerable ways

ASIAN INFLUENCES REACH NORTH AMERICAN AND CENTRAL AMERICA

Many travelers and students have noted the similarity of ancient Asians and early Americans

regarding social customs, religious rites, arts and languages -- examples of these include:

•almost identical zodiac signs used by Chinese and Native Mexicans;

•buildings in both China and Central American that used roofing materials

of concave (bowl-shaped) and convex (curved outward) tiles;

•preservation of human ashes in burial urns;

•some early American inscriptions have many features of a written language

which may have been read in columns from top to bottom -- Asian fashion;

•coins, utensils and objects of adornment were found that were Asiatic in origin

IRISH CATHOLIC MONKS WERE RENOWN TRAVELERS

Saint Brendan (Brendan the Voyager, Brendan the Navigator) was part of Ireland’s

glorious history when the island was first converted to Christianity

like others of his time he set out to convert non-believers to his Roman Catholic faith

he sailed from Ireland in a boat of stitched leather

For seven years Saint Brendan journeyed to find the Promised Land of the saints

sometime between 512-530 CE

fabulous stories of his voyages over perilous waters were popular in the Middle Ages

over the years many interpretations of where he visited surfaced

various pre-Columbian (before Christopher Columbus [1492]) sea-charts

indicated Saint Brendan sailed everywhere from the southern part of Ireland

to the Faroes Island (off Denmark), Portuguese islands of Azores and Madeira

and to the Canary Islands (off West Africa)

(another theory of St. Brendan’s travel arose supported by Viking discoveries [1000 CE]

who found a region south of the Chesapeake Bay called “Irland ed mikla”

(Greater Ireland)

and stone carvings discovered in West Virginia dated between 500 and [1000] CE

exhibit grammar and vocabulary in Old Irish using the Ogham alphabet

(Today Saint Brendan is the Patron Saint of sailors and travelers)

CHINA IS REUNITED UNDER THE TANG DYNASTY

Tang Dynasty of China, 618-[907] CE once again revived commerce along the Silk Road

dynasty records indicated the population of the empire to be about fifty million people

its capital city (today’s Xi’an) was the time the most populous city in the world

With a large population, the dynasty was able to raise professional and conscripted armies

numbering in the hundreds of thousands

nomadic powers dominating Inner Asia were dealt overthrown

various kingdoms and states paid tribute to the Tang court

lucrative trade routes along the ancient Silk Road could be protected

Tang dynasty established internal stability and initiated economic development in China

policies were carried out to stimulate and encourage trade between east and west

leading to expanding markets and rapid development along the Silk Road

foreigners came and lived in numerous Chinese cities for trade and commerce

Canton (today’s Guangzhou) was described as a bustling mercantile center

many impressive foreign ships from Borneo, Indonesia, Java and Persia visited

it was reported to deal in spices, pearls and jade piled as high as mountains

Chinese porcelain was treasured along with ceramics, rice-wine and tea

China’s Silk Road covered 7,000 miles and spanned China, Central Asia, Northern India,

the Arabian Peninsula and the Roman Empire

it connected the valley of the Yellow River with the Mediterranean Sea

passing through (the present-day countries of Iran, Iraq and Syria)

Towns and cities sprung up along the Silk Road

these became centers for national crafts, art schools, palaces and mausoleums

traders, missionaries and refuges traveled together bringing new religions, customs,

products like glass, porcelain, soap and gunpowder

and most important, a different culture

these were the people who gather collections of dried plants, studied the stars

and recorded methods of curing diseases

Great Silk Road linked many countries and people by means of peaceful activities

such as trade, culture and spiritual exchanges

THREE EUPOPEAN CITIES DEVELOP TRADE WITH THE EAST

Silk Road was a famous trade route that linked China with the early Greeks [400 BCE]

followed by the Roman Empire [100 BCE]

trade along the Silk Road was periodically stopped for varying lengths of time

by political turmoil along the route

Merchants from Pisa and Genoa on the Mediterranean Sea and Venice on the Adriatic Sea

re-opened trade with the East and prospered by selling eastern commodities

carried along the route

goods traveled from the ancient city of Xi’an, China along the Silk Road

across northern China then along several possible routes to Kashgar, China

then along several routes to Mashhad (Iran) to Bagdad (Iraq)

and on to Istanbul (Turkey)

Muslims gladly traded with them at Alexandria, Egypt

or even in Aleppo and Damascus, Syria

but consolidation of the Ottoman Empire [1299] blocked all east-west trade to Europe

there was no direct contact between Europe and Asia for the next century

ISLAMIC INFLUENCE ON EAST-WEST TRADE

Europe’s Iberian Peninsula (Spain and Portugal) was conquered by Islamic leaders -- 711

(Muslim forces, known was the Moors, maintained control for more than 700 years

during that time, Muslims diligently preserved the wisdom of the Greeks

and enhanced learning with ideas from China, India and Africa

this information was passed on to Europe through Spain and Portugal)

WESTERN ROMAN EMPIRE BECOMES THE “HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE”

Imperial control of the Western Roman Empire became weaker and weaker

at the same time the Catholic Pope at Rome became increasingly powerful

an ongoing struggle between the rising papacy and the retreating empire led the pope

to unilaterally declare Charlemagne the successor of the Western Emperors -- 800

this gave rise to the “Holy Roman Empire” in Europe

Imperial control of the Eastern Roman Empire, now the Byzantine Empire,

remained independent from the Western Roman Empire for more than 1100 years

ONCE AGAIN THE SILK ROAD DECLINES

Trade along the Silk Road declined with the fall of the Chinese Tang Dynasty -- 907 CE

Chinese did maintain a silk-fur trade with the Russians north of the original Silk Route

overland trade became increasingly dangerous

trade within Europe became more popular

NORTH AMERICA IS DISCOVERED BY EUROPEANS

Leif Erickson (various spellings) was the son of Norwegians Thjodhild and Erik the Red

who founded the first Norse colonies in Greenland where Leif was raised

Leif Erickson sailed to Norway where King Olaf converted him to Christianity around 1000

there are at least two versions of events leading up to Erickson’s great discovery:

•on his way back to Greenland, Erickson was blown off course

he landed on the North American continent which he named “Vinland;”

•he may have sought out Vinland based on stories of an earlier voyage

by an Icelandic trader

Leif Erickson and his crew of thirty-five men spent the winter in Vinland

they built a small settlement

(later called Leifsbudir [Leif’s Booths] by visitors from Greenland)

Leif returned to Greenland in the spring with a cargo of grapes and timber

(Norwegian research done in the [early 1960s] identified a Norse settlement

located at the northern tip (of today’s Newfoundland)

later archaeological evidence suggests that Vinland may have been the area

around (today’s Gulf of St. Lawrence) while Leifsbudir was a boat repair center

this indicates the settlement of Vinland may have occupied multiple locations

two other sites in Vinland are also mentioned in sagas

written in the [1500s and 1600s]

Straumfjord in the north and Hop in the south)

THE CRUSADES WERE BATTLES TO DRIVE MOSLEMS FROM THE HOLY LAND

The Holy Land referred to part of the Middle East that is sacred to three major religions:

•for Jews it is the ancient Land of Israel (today’s Palestine)

holy because it is where Moses led the Israelites to the promised land;

•this region between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea is holy for Christians

because it is the place where Jesus Christ lived and taught;

•for Muslims (the followers of Muhammad) it is holy because it was conquered

by the Arabs and became the center of an empire that expanded

across the Middle East from India on the east and across North Africa

to the south and to Spain and Portugal on the west and north

many sites in the Holy Land have long been pilgrimage destinations for all three religions

Jerusalem is the holiest of cities for all three religions

Western Europe was dominated by the Roman Catholic Church

Catholic religion was transportable and proselytizing (converting others)

spreading Christianity became a reason for military conquests

because of the power and influence maintained by the Roman Catholic pope

criticism of the church was impossible (before the time of Christopher Columbus)

Crusades were led by the Roman Catholic Church to remove Muslims from the Holy Land

military units of Roman Catholics from all over western Europe

marched to the Holy Land

roads, unused since the days of Rome, were need to raise, transport and supply armies

significant increases in traffic took place as local merchants

increased their areas of operation

nine Crusades were led by the church between 1096 CE and [1272 CE]

(In a series of battles the Portuguese drove the Moors (Muslims) out of the country [1250]

Portugal became an independent nation)

FUEDALISM OF THE MIDDLE AGES RESTRICTS THE LIVES OF EUROPEANS

There were many motivations for people to remain exactly where they were located

family and friends, security and protection, knowledge of surroundings

and fear of the unknown dominated the instinct of curiosity and the spirit of adventure

Yet a few adventurers in opposition to common practice did set out to see the world

an individual, perhaps joined by a companion, might strike out along a main road or path

it was possible to live off the land if the traveler was cautious and adaptable

it was important for a stranger to appear nonthreatening and to show a friendly face

merchants or missionaries could practice their trade along the way to generate an income

but to be accepted by the locals they must be willing to learn and accept new ideas

and be tolerant of new ways of doing things

if necessary, the journey could be extended as long as necessary -- even for a decades

perils of travel varied by landscape, weather conditions and encounters with strangers

these made the journey challenging and suspenseful but rewarding

MAPS ADD TO THE FEAR OF THE UNKNOWN

Rather than providing a depiction of the shape of the land in a specific location or area

early European maps were the depictions of the unknown by an artist

tiny known areas were approximately portrayed

these were surrounded by vast areas of terra incognita (land unknown)

immense unknown areas were fancifully filled in by Christian artists

to locate Biblical places

Jerusalem, the center of the earth, was placed in the center of the map

heaven, an ocean that surrounded the earth (much like air),

was located at the top of the map

terrifying demons, blood-thirsty animals, voracious plants and frightful people

denominated the unknown regions -- instilling terror and stifling wanderlust

Garden of Eden moved from location to location as maps progressively expanded

GENGHIS KHAN (RULER) UNITES THE MONGOL EMPIRE

Mongol Empire emerged from the unification of Mongol and Turkic tribes of Mongolia

under the leadership of Genghis Khan who united many of the nomadic tribes

of northeast Asia by the use of wholesale slaughter of the local inhabitants -- 1206

(Genghis Khan and his empire have a fearsome reputation

in local histories to this day)

significant among these people were the Tatars

native people of Volga River region of Russia

fierce horse riders, skilled archers and well-schooled in the art of war

they were a fearsome enemy

Genghis Khan’s leadership, charisma, innovations in law and organization

gave him the tools necessary to expand his empire exponentially

Under Genghis Khan the Mongol Empire encompassed Central Asia and Cathay (China)

east to the borders of the Korean Peninsula and west to parts of the Middle East

to the south the heartlands of India were drawn into the empire

by the time of his death --1227

Death of Genghis Khan left his empire divided into four “khanates”

his descendants went on to capture the largest contiguous land empire in human history

stretching from Eastern Europe to the Sea of Japan,

covering large parts of Siberia in the north

south into Southeast Asia, the Indian subcontinent, the Iranian plateau

and the Middle East

Genghis Khan and his descendents Batu Khan, Mangu Khan, Kublai Khan and Hulagu

showed a combination of military genius, personal courage administrative versatility

and cultural tolerance unequaled in Europe

they conquered or created vassal states out of (modern-day China, Korea, Vietnam, Iraq,

Syria, Turkey, Afghanistan, Pakistan, Palestine, Ukraine, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan,

Turkmenistan, Belarus, Azerbaijan, Georgia, Belarus, Armenia, Poland, Estonia,

Latvia, Lithuania, Hungary, Bulgaria, Thailand, Myanmar, Japan, Java, Austria,

Croatia, Egypt, Israel, Jordan, Lebanon, Saudi Arabia, Serbia, Kuwait, Montenegro,

Bosnia and Herzegovina, Albania, Greece and Macedonia)

swarms of Tatar horsemen ravaged Poland and Hungry --1241

spreading fear throughout the Christian Europe as Mongol warriors were poised

to swarm across Europe the great Khan Okkodai died forcing their return home

EMPIRE OF KUBLAI KHAN, THE GRANDSON OF GENGHIS KHAN RULES BY LAW

Mongol Empire was separated into four Khanates, each ruled by a separate Khan

Kublai Khan came to power through strength of arms but his reign also featured

advancements in political organization as well as the arts and sciences

he organized his bureaucracy based on the traditional Mongol system,

but also adopted many aspects of Chinese administrative practices

Kublai Khan employed large numbers of Chinese officials and advisors

after all he had tens of thousands of Mongols with him

and they had to rule millions of Chinese

Kublai continued to expand the Mongol Empire but in contrast to Genghis Khan and others

he stressed to his generals the importance and effectiveness of clemency

toward the conquered

Kublai Khan was elected Khan of Mongolia and Cathay (China) at age forty-five --1260

when the Great Khan came to the Mongol throne his empire reached

from the Yellow River in China to the shores of the Danube in eastern Europe

and from Siberia to the Persian Gulf

eleven years later he created the Yuan Dynasty of Cathay uniting the four empires

his reign was one of solid expansion and lasting achievements

his people enjoyed economic prosperity and advanced the fields of science and

literature astronomy, mathematics and medicine reached a very high level

Chinese economy was mainly based on agriculture that developed superior techniques

paper currency backed by gold that was good throughout China

stimulated the development of commerce

trade with foreign countries was greatly encouraged

New artistic styles flourished as Kublai Khan sponsored a melding

of Chinese and Tibetan Buddhism

he patronized astronomers and clock-makers

he hired a monk to create a written language

for some of Western China’s non-literate languages

DESPITE THE FEARS OF CHRISTIANS, THE MONGOLS BECAME POWERFUL ALLIES

Muslims Turks had blocked all trade along the ancient Silk Road

Mongol warriors successfully invaded and occupied the shores of the Caspian Sea

and overcame the Ottoman Caliph of Baghdad and Syria

Mongol empires extended twice the size of the Roman Empire

the route to East-West trade was suddenly re-opened to European travelers

Tartars, Mongol people from Central Asia were much maligned by European historians

as reckless destroyers and barbarians

these historians never saw a Tartar and knew nothing of their culture and progress[[41]](#footnote-41)

Mongol leaders believed in free trade among nations

they provided the usual Mongol policy of low customs charges, lower tolls and taxes,

well-policed roads to protect against bandits and free passage for everyone

great Silk Road that had been heavily traveled for centuries was open to Europeans

Tatar conquest of Russia opened a northern road to Cathay

MARCO POLO TRAVELS TO THE INDIES

Marco Polo’s father Noicolo and uncle Maffeo were Venice (Italy) merchants

who were involved in the Asian trade and had visited the court of Kublai Khan

Marco Polo was seventeen years old when he left Venice with his father and uncle

bypassing Constantinople on an overland trading trip to Cathay (China)

reaching the Silk Road, they crossed high mountains and deserts

they fought fierce nomads who plundered caravans of trade goods

Marco Polo and his relatives reached the Court of Kublai Khan in Cathay (China) -- 1271

In court Marco saw that the Great Khan’s ambassadors were unable to provide information

regarding anything beyond the specific business, they had been sent to conduct

Marco was sent on a mission of his own to represent the Great Khan

Marco took pains to learn about all kinds of different matters in countries he visited

to report back the details lacking in other reports but important to Kublai Khan

he was awed by the ruthlessness and hardiness of the Mongol soldiers

Kublai Khan was quite impressed by young Marco Polo

every year he became more reluctant to lose Marco’s services

Marco remained in the employ of Khan for seventeen years

traveling on missions to far off places

Marco Polo had knowledge of or had actually visited a greater number

of different countries than any other man in the world

(After an absence of twenty-four years all three Polos returned to Venice [winter 1295]

they brought hidden in their clothes a shower of rubies, diamonds and emeralds)

DEATH OF KUBLAI KHAN LEADS TO AN TO EAST-WEST TRADE

During the glorious period of trade diplomatic activities with foreign countries were frequent

many foreign envoys, merchants and travelers such as Italian merchant Marco Polo

traveled to Cathay

However, following the death of Kublai Khan --1294

East-West trade stopped -- all roads to the East were closed [1350]

MEDITERRANEAN SEA WAS THE CENTER OF EUROPEAN TRADE

Trade within Europe was conducted by Venice, Naples, Genoa and Pisa ships

which sailed north to bring products from Northern Europe

back to the Mediterranean trade centers

Venice early became important in the Mediterranean trade

aided by the stability of her government the city became the most prosperous

Florence became outstanding in banking and woolen manufacture

Naples, Milan and Venice ranked among the five most populous cities in Western Europe

GENOA AND VENICE BATTLE FOR CONTROL OF THE MEDITERRANEAN TRADE

Bitter rivalry between the two centers of trade erupted in fighting

a climatic sea battle off the Dalmatian coast left Genoa the victor -- September 6, 1298

one the seven thousand Venetian prisoners was ship commander Marco Polo

who was brought back in chains to Genoa

MERCHANTS IN EUROPE CONDUCT TRADE WITH CHINA

City merchants of Genoa and Pisa on the Mediterranean Sea and Venice on the Adriatic Sea

prospered by selling exotic Eastern commodities

goods traveled over the Silk Road from eastern China through central Asia

passed through Baghdad (Iraq) on the way to Istanbul (Turkey)

Muslims in Alexandria (Egypt), Aleppo and Damascus (Syria)

gladly traded with the merchants of Genoa, Pisa and Venice

but Muslim Turks did not allow European goods to pass through Istanbul to the East

However, Egyptian routes in the hands of Turkish Muslims

were very difficult for Europeans to use

goods passing by that route were so heavily taxed by the local sultans

that Indian merchandise tripled in cost by the time it reached a merchant

in Pisa, Genoa and Venice [[42]](#footnote-42)

Turkish tribes conquered Constantinople (Istanbul), Turkey -- 1299

this was the beginning the Ottoman Empire

one of the most powerful empires in the world

Ottoman Turks established a multinational, multilingual empire

controlling much of southeast Europe, Western Asia and North Africa

all trade between Europe and Asia was ended

MARCO POLO DICTATES THE STORY OF HIS VAST TRAVELS

Marco became friendly with another prisoner, Rustichello, who authored tales of romance

such as his retelling of the tales of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table

Marco dictated his reminiscences of his travels throughout Cathay (China)

to another prisoner -- 1300

Rustichello knew the makings of a good story and could not restrain himself

from occasionally embellishing Marco’s exploits with episodes of his own creation

Rustichello published the *Travels of Marco Polo* not in Latin -- the language of the clergy

but rather in French -- the language of literate

before long Marco Polo’s was translated into most European languages

**“never before or since has a single book brought so much authentic new information, or so widened the vista for a continent.”[[43]](#footnote-43)**

Marco Polo was nicknamed “Marco Millioni” because of his supposed exaggerations

Polo reported “Ania” was an Asiatic province located in the interior of Cathay

he noted a water link connected Europe with Ania -- the “Strait of Anian”

SPAIN BECOMES INTERESTED IN TRADE WITH THE EAST

Marco Polo had stirred the imagination of adventures in Europe

he began a search for a water passage to the East which lasted for 500 years

(until Roald Amundsen sailed the *Gjoa* from the Atlantic to the Pacific [1907])

Islamic rulers of Spain were interested in recording and expanding knowledge of the world

Spanish geographers worked out new maps

which confirmed details in Marco Polo’s book -- 1375

these writing stirred the imagination of adventurers

and sparked the search for great wealth

FUNDIMENTAL CHANGES TAKE PLACE IN EUROPE

People in Europe did not consider themselves part of a nation

they rarely left their village and knew little of the larger world

most were responsible to the local feudal nobles who provided only limited protection

A few monarchs began to consolidate their power

by allying themselves with the emerging commercial classes

they weaken the control local feudal nobles exerted over their subjects

Consolidation of wealth and power into the hands of a few led to the rise of city-states

whose increasing prosperity and power from international trade and commerce

led to an increase in the size of territory to be conquered

new forms of social technology developed that provided for successful administration

bureaucracy grew in size and authority, double-entry bookkeeping,

and mechanical printing all allowed merchants and rulers

to manage far-flung empires

since the invention of gunpowder by the Chinese [1232] military technology advanced

as European rulers began to commission improved guns and larger cannons

an ability to mount cannons on ships developed

arms races also extended to refinements in archery and siege tactics

amassing wealth and dominating other people became positively valued attributes

they provided the key means of winning esteem on earth -- and salvation in heaven

Europe had enjoyed success in exploiting various newly-discovered islands and societies

gradually spreading more deadly forms of smallpox and bubonic plague across Europe

and devastatingly carrying diseases to places where immunity did not exist

EUROPEAN TRADE MERCHANTS HAVE FIRM CONTROL OF EAST-WEST TRADE

City-states of the Italian Peninsula were the beginning and end of the trade routes to the East

trade goods were very expensive to purchase and to transport

Italian and Constantinople trade merchants justified their high prices

by pointing out the dangers involved in conducting trade:

•traders had to carry goods half way around the world;

•caravans had to crawl through high mountain passes infested with bandits;

•local lords taxed the travelers and their cargo;

•bridges and ferries charged tolls;

•goods passed through the hands of many middlemen -- each earned a profit

Clearly, a new preferably all water route, was needed

to transport increased amounts of trade goods

PORTUGUESE LEADERS BEGIN TO SEEK A NEW TRADE ROUTE TO THE EAST

Prince Henry (The Navigator) was the third son of Portuguese King John

like his brothers Henry desired fame and glory

to fulfill that end he oversaw construction of a fleet of ships to be used in a crusade

against the infidels (non-Christians) then occupying Gibraltar, Portugal

while his fleet was en route to establish a glorious reputation for Henry

his father, King John, rejected his plan

Prince Henry returned home to sulk -- but rather return and brood in the court in Lisbon

he went to the very tip of southern Portugal

there he created a new path to fame and glory

twenty-six-year-old Prince Henry established headquarters at Sagres, Portugal

and remained for forty years until his death [1460]

Portugal’s location faced away from the centers of European civilization

rather it looked westward toward the vast unknown ocean

and southward toward the African continent

of which Europeans were equally ignorant

Prince Henry sought to explore into the unknown around Africa

hopefully, as rumors persisted, India could be reached by this route

however, the idea was pure speculation based on rumors, vague ideas and suggestions

unknown lands must be skirted and used to supply food and water along the route

Christian geographers depicted scenes of mortal danger in *terra incognita* (land unknown)

what would be required was an original, progressive, systematic national program

PRINCE HENRY OF PORTUGAL BECOMES HENRY THE NAVIGATOR

Henry knew the only way to explore the unknown

was to clearly mark its receding boundaries

he made Sagres a center for cartography, navigation and shipbuilding

he initiated and organized expeditions on the edge of the unknown world

although he never ventured out himself

Henry organized something like a school for mariners at Sagres, Portugal

Henry gathered together old and new books, charts and maps

sea captains, pilots, mariners and travelers from all over Europe arrived

bringing new information, observations and facts

scholars and geographers, aware of ancient discoveries, arrived to record

old and new information

map-makers, compass-makers and other instrument-makers arrived to advance navigation

mariners’ compasses were well known at this time

skilled craftsmen developed a simpler cross-staff to measure latitude,

to measure the angle of the stars for the same purpose the quadrant was invented,

mathematical tables were developed to accurately determine latitude anywhere

shipbuilders, carpenters and other craftsmen improved ship construction

that resulted in an advanced sailing ship

sail-makers revived old concepts and developed new skills and techniques

that revolutionized the skill of sailing

tradesmen arrived to plan and prepare expeditions searching farther into the unknown

Henry the Navigator at first encouraged, and then required, the leaders of his expeditions

to keep accurate logbooks and charts to be brought back to Sagres

so cartographers could accurately record the information that had been generated

Portugal’s standard ship, the familiar square-rigged *BarcaI,*

was suited to sailing with the wind

these large ships worked well in the confines of the Mediterranean Sea

where larger cargoes assured greater profit -- maneuverability was not important

however, ships designed for discovery did not need to be large

its important cargo was information which could be carried on a map or in a logbook

or journal or even in a man’s mind

discovery ships had to be maneuverable and they had to be able to sail back home

Henry’s craftsmen developed the Portuguese “caravel”

small highly maneuverable sailing ships

they were agile and easy to navigate with a shallow keel (bottom)

caravels could sail upriver and in shallow coastal waters

they displaced about fifty tons and were seventy feet long with a twenty-five-foot beam

they were large enough to hold supplies for a small crew of about twenty

who usually slept on the deck but in bad weather went below

mariners who sailed out with the wind had to return against the wind

square-rigged sails were pushed by the wind

and pulled into the vacuum generated as the wind blew across the curved sails

ancient Roman ships had used lateen-rigged sails

rather than running across the ship like square-rigged sails

lateen-rigged sails ran the length of the ship and were triangular shaped

lateen-rigged sails could be turned into the wind

caravels carried two or three lateen sails and were ideal for exploration

limited capacity for cargo and crew were their main drawbacks

Caravels became the explorers’ standard ship

Port of Lagos, Portugal near Sagres became a shipbuilding center

Year after year Prince Henry sent out expeditions to explore

using its newly-developed caravels, Portugal discovered the Madeira Islands

and the Azores located west and south of Portugal

these were claimed by Portugal by “right of discovery”

leap-frogging exploration of the West coast of Africa was begun using caravels

African pilots helped Prince Henry’s captains explore their way down the coast

African slave trade was first begun when Portuguese explorers

sold two hundred captives in Lagos (Nigeria) -- 1444

slave trade profits changed the public’s attitude toward Prince Henry the Navigator

up until then he had cost the kingdom a considerable amount of money

with very little return on the investment

however, profits from the slave trade turned public criticism into praise

Portuguese sailors heard that African traders were sailing across the Atlantic Ocean -- 1450

but the primary goal for Prince Henry the Navigator’s explorers was India

CONSTANTINOPLE FALLS TO THE TURKS

Constantine was the capital city of the Eastern Roman or Byzantine Empire

that had been founded by the Roman Empire Constantine the Great [330 CE]

this was the home of the Eastern Orthodox Catholic Church

as opposed to the Roman Catholic Church founded in Rome (Italy)

Constantinople fell to European soldiers during the Fourth Crusade [1204]

and was captured by Muslims led by Sultan Mehmen II’s Ottoman Turks -- 1453

Byzantine Empire was replaced by the Ottoman Empire

(Ottoman Empire reached its peak covering parts of Asia, Europe and Africa [1590]

and reigned until the end of World War I [1917] when the empire was broken up)

SPAIN OVERTHROWS THE ISLAMIC GOVERNMENT

Muslims ruled large parts of the Iberian Peninsula (Spain and Portugal) more than 700 years

Seventeen-year-old King Ferdinand II of Aragon

married eighteen-year-old Isabella of Castile

they began their cooperative reign uniting two important regions of Spain --1469

They were propelled by their Roman Catholic faith to pursue an expensive, bloody,

ten-year war to drive out the Moors (Muslims)

and unite their land under Christian leadership

Ferdinand and Isabella incorporated a number of independent Spanish realms

into their kingdom

JOHN II BECOMES KING OF PORTUGAL

Portuguese expeditions organized by Prince Henry the Navigator,

the younger brother of John II,

had crawled down the West African coast in search of riches -- notably gold

while this had greatly extended Portuguese maritime knowledge,

there was little profit to show for the effort

Upon becoming king of Portugal, John II needed to build up the royal treasury -- 1481

he saw expanding commerce as the key

he was eager to break into the highly profitable Italian spice trade

between Europe and Asia

King John II wanted to find a new all-water trade route to Asia

by sailing around the African continent

PORTUGAL LAUNCHES THE “AGE OF DISCOVERY”

Portuguese King John II sent Captain Bartholomew Dias to explore the coast of West Africa

in search of a way to reach the Indian Ocean

previously only possible by traveling overland

Dias sailed from Lisbon, Portugal with three ships -- August 1487

leaving his supply ship behind, he sailed two ships off the coast of South Africa

Dias reached the southern tip of Africa which was named the “Cape of Hood Hope”

he continued east as far as the Eastern Cape province of South Africa

before turning back

(After fifteen months at sea and a journey of 16,000 miles the returning triumphant mariners

were met by welcoming crowds in Lisbon, Portugal [December 1488]

one was Christopher Columbus who had been trying to convince King John II

of his idea to reach the East by sailing West

Dias’ good news was bad news for Columbus)

SPAIN BEGINS THE INQUISTION TO DRIVE OUT SPANISH JEWS

Catholic Pope Sixtus IV allowed Ferdinand and Isabella to introduce the Spanish Inquisition

a powerful and brutal force to confront what was seen as a danger to the church

from Jews masquerading as Christians

All Jews who refused to leave Spain or to convert to Christianity would be driven from Spain

or would face torture and death by the Spanish Inquisition --1488

SPAIN EXPANDS ITS INQUISITION

Ferdinand and Isabella drove the last of the Moors (Muslims) from Granada, Spain -- 1492

Spanish Muslims were given a similar order as had been given the Spanish Jews

leave Spain, convert to Christianity or face the Inquisition

Spain went from being one of the most tolerant countries in Europe

to one of the most intolerant

Catholic Inquisition tortured and killed Jew and Muslims alike in Spain, Portugal,

(and expanded to the Spanish Netherlands and Latin America

until it is suppressed in Portugal [1820] and [1834] in Spain)

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS PREPARES AN EXPEDITION OF DISCOVERY FOR SPAIN

Italian navigator Christopher Columbus traveled extensively through Europe

he may have learned of the Viking’s discoveries in the “New World”

he claimed to have visited Iceland [1477]

Failing to gain support for his plan to reach China by sailing West across the Atlantic Ocean

from either Italy (already conducting trade with Cathay [China])

or Portugal (which was then searching for a route to China of its own around Africa)

Italian navigator Christopher Columbus presented his plan to Spain’s Queen Isabella

she referred the idea to a committee for their consideration

Spanish advisors determined that Columbus grossly underestimated the distance to Asia

they advised their Royal Highnesses to reject the impractical plan

however, to keep Columbus from taking his ideas elsewhere, the explorer was given

an annual allowance and was provided a letter ordering all cities and towns

under Ferdinand and Isabella to provide him food and lodging at no cost

After lobbying the Spanish Royal court for two years Queen Isabella remained opposed

Columbus left the court in despair -- however, King Ferdinand intervened

Columbus’ voyage of discovery was saved

About half of the funding for the expedition came from private investors

Spain was financially bankrupt after fighting the Moors (Muslims) for ten years

royal treasurer was forced to shift funds to pay for the expedition

Christopher Columbus was made “Admiral of the Ocean”

and was to receive a part of all profits

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS EXPLORES FOR SPAIN

Forty-one-year-old Columbus departed on his first trip from Palos, Spain

in search of India (China, Cipangu [Japan] and the islands of the East Indies)

he led three caravels: the flag ship *Santa Maria* accompanied by the *Nina*

and the *Pinta* -- August 3, 1492

As instructed by Spanish monarchs Ferdinand and Isabella,

this was no mere trade or even exploration trip,

but was rather a conquest and exploitation effort

converting any newly discovered natives to Christianity was used as the rationale

Columbus stopped in the Canary Islands off the coast of West Africa for repairs

before continuing to sail West -- September 6

his journal noted they enjoyed lovely sailing

seas were so calm the sailors were able to converse from ship to ship

they experienced high seas only on the last day when they knew land was near

Columbus reached the New World when he discovered and named San Salvador

(a small island in today’s Bahamas) -- October 12, 1492

he was certain this was on an outlying island of Cipango (Japan)

Arawak natives of the island soon appeared and brought gifts for Columbus and his crew

some of the ornaments worn by the natives were made of gold

using sign language, these people told Columbus there were many more islands

to the north and south where they found gold

Columbus explored five nearby islands

since Columbus thought he was in the East Indies, he misnamed the people “Indians”

Columbus sailed on to the island of Cuba­ where he arrived -- October 28

thinking he had found China, he sent two men to investigate

but they failed to find the emperor

Leaving Cuba, Columbus made another landfall -- December 5

natives called the island Haiti, but Columbus renamed it La Espanola

(today’s Hispaniola island contains the nations of Haiti and the Dominican Republic)

*Santa Maria* ran aground and had to be abandoned -- December 25, 1492

Columbus himself took over as captain of the *Nin*a

Columbus arranged to leave thirty-nine of his men behind on La Espanola (Hispaniola)

in a small settlement he named La Navidad(in today’s Haiti)

which means Christmas in Spanish

Christopher Columbus began his return voyage to Spain -- January 16, 1493

Columbus kidnapped between ten to twenty-five Indians to be taken to Spain

this is the first slave trading exploitation between the Old and New Worlds

Columbus reached Palos, Spain -- March 15, 1493

to prove his success, he displayed the seven or eight natives who survived the trip

he revealed to his crew that he kept two ship’s logs in an effort to keep secret

his route to the East Indies (which he never reached)

as his reward from Spanish King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella

Columbus was promoted to “Admiral of the Ocean Sea”

Columbus had launched the “Age of Discovery”

When Columbus reached the Western Hemisphere

perhaps twenty million or more people lived there

nations such as the Arawaks of the newly discovered West Indies stunned Europeans

they had no monarchs or hierarchy

Fascination with America led to European self-consciousness and religious confusion

some Europeans glorified Indian nations as examples of simpler, better societies

from which European civilization had devolved

others maligned Indian societies as primitive and underdeveloped

CATHOLIC CHURCH WAS COFOUNDED BY INFORMATION COLUMBUS BROUGHT

Christopher Columbus had, in fact, discovered a whole New World

it was noted in the Bible that all animals lived in the Garden of Eden

later two of each species entered Noah’s arc

where did all of these animals not mentioned in the Bible come from?

even more confusing, who were these new people not mentioned in the Bible?

unlike Muslims they had not rejected Christianity -- they had never encountered it

Also, there was the issue of two Catholic nations, Portugal and Spain,

competing over the New World

Spanish rulers Ferdinand and Isabella feared claims and expansion by Portugal

would limit Spain’s access to Columbus’ discovery

and strengthen Portugal’s economy

they insisted the pope grant them exclusive claim

to all lands South and West toward India

Pope Alexander VI issued the *Inter caetera* papal bull (charter)

dividing the western hemisphere into Portuguese and Spanish zones

“Line of Demarcation” was drawn 100 Leagues West of Portugal’s Cape Verde islands

off the West coast of Africa -- May 4, 1493

this recognized Portuguese claims to the land east of the line including Africa

Spain was entitled to all lands West of the Line of Demarcation

almost entirely all of the New World fell under Spanish influence

thus France, the Netherlands and England were left without a sea route to Asia

unless their ships defied the papal ban and explored anyway

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS’ SECOND VOYAGE TO THE NEW WORLD

Spain immediately appreciated the value Columbus’ discoveries

Ferdinand and Isabella outfitted him for a second expedition to explore and colonize

with seventeen caravels, 1,200-1,500 men, pigs, horses, cattle, attack dogs

cannons, crossbows, guns, cavalry and their diseases

Columbus’ orders were to expand the Hispaniola settlement,

convert the natives to Christianity, establish a trading post

and continue his explorations in search of China or Japan

Columbus sailed from the Canary Island -- October 13, 1493

his journey led to the discovery of the island of Dominica, the Leeward Islands,

Lesser Antilles chain and Puerto Rico south of Cuba

giving Spain the claim of discovery over each

islands discovered by Columbus became known as the West Indies

When Christopher Columbus returned to his colony of La Navidad

on the island of Hispaniola

he discovered all of his men had been killed by angry natives

Columbus attacked a local tribe and took many of the people as slaves

Columbus had been appointed governor and Viceroy of the new lands by the Spanish crown

his second voyage marked the start of the colonization of the New World

over the next year and a half did his best to establish a government but failed

he kept most of what little wealth was found for himself -- supplies began to run out

COLUMBUS RETURNS TO SPAIN WITH LITTLE TO SHOW FOR HIS EFFORTS

Columbus returned to Spain to ask for more resources to keep his struggling colony alive

Columbus had promised gold and trade routes

he did not want to return to Spain empty-handed

instead, on his second expedition he brought back many native slaves with him

Appalled, Queen Isabella decreed New World natives were subjects of the Spanish crown

therefore they could not be enslaved

most were freed and ordered returned to the New World

TREATY OF TORDESILLAS IS SIGNED BY SPAIN AND PORTUGAL

Pope Alexander VI’s *Inter caetera* papal bull (Line of Demarcation)

had divided an unknown New World between two Catholic nations -- 1493

Portuguese King John II was not pleased with that arrangement

he felt his sailors were forced to sail too close to the coast of Western Africa

African traders visiting (today’s Brazil) may have influenced King John II

to insist on moving pope’s Line of Demarcation to the west

Spanish and Portuguese ambassadors met at Tordesillas in northwest Spain t

to resolve the dispute

they accepted the principle of dividing the New World

as established by Pope Alexander VI

they agreed to move the old line 100 leagues

west of the Cape Verde islands -- June 7, 1494

(this new line has a profound significance -- it sliced South America into two parts

the Eastern part came under Portuguese control

and the Western portion fell to the Spanish)

Treaty of Tordesillas effectively countered Pope Alexander VI’s *Inter caetera* papal bull

even though the new treaty was negotiated without consulting the Pope,

some sources called the resulting line the Papal Line of Demarcation

ENGLAND REACHES THE NEW WORLD

John Cabot, an Italian navigator and explorer, was financed by Italian merchants in London

and commissioned by England’s King Henry VII to sail on a voyage of discovery

he believed that the route to Asia would be shorter from northern Europe

than Columbus’ route

On Cabot’s first effort he sailed the *Matthew*, a fast and able ship of fifty tons

(tonnage was a measure of volume and not weight)

with a crew of eighteen men from Bristol, England -- summer 1496

fifty days into the voyage, Cabot landed on the east coast of North America

although the precise location of this landing is subject to controversy

he is thought to have given “Newfoundland*,* “an island in Canada, its name

wherever Cabot landed, his expedition became the first Europeans

to set foot in North American since the Vikings 500 years earlier

Cabot only reported landing once during his expedition

and he did not advance inland any distance

he made no contact with any native people

but did find the remains of a fire, a human trail, nets and a wooden tool

Cabot’s crew appeared to have remained on land only long enough to take on fresh water

and to raise the Venetian and Papal banners

and claim the land for the King of England

PORTUGAL FINDS AN ALL-WATER TRADE ROUTE TO INDIA

Portuguese explorer Vasco da Gama under a commission from King John II

sailed a fleet of four ships with a crew of 170 men from Lisbon, Portugal -- July 8, 1497

da Gama commanded the *Sao Gabriel* accompanied by its sister ship the *Sao Rafael,*

the slightly smaller caravel *Berrio* and an unnamed storage ship

da Gama followed the route pioneered by earlier Portuguese explorers

along the coast of Africa

Rounding the Cape of Good Hope, he sailed up the east coast of Africa

to Malindi (just north of Mambasa in today’s Kenya, Africa)

there he contracted the services of a pilot whose knowledge of the monsoon winds

allowed him to bring the expedition east to Calicut

located on the southwest coast of India

Vasco da Gama’s expedition was successful beyond all reasonable expectation

he carried back two ship loads of spices to Lisbon, Portugal [August 1499]

these were sold at an enormous profit to the crown

for sixty times the cost of the expedition

still, the expedition had exacted a large cost

one ship and over half his men had been lost

JOHN CABOT’S SECOND ENGLISH EXPEDITION ENDS IN MYSTERY

John Cabot’s second expedition to Newfoundland was far less successful that his first voyage

Cabot departed from Bristol, England with five ships and a crew of 300 men -- May 1498

his ships carried ample provisions and small samplings of cloth, lace and “trifles”

which suggested he was to begin trade with the native people

en route, one ship became disabled and sailed to Ireland as the other four ships continued

from this point there is only speculation as to the fate of the voyage and John Cabot

COLUMBUS’ THIRD VOYAGE ENDS IN HIS ARREST

Christopher Columbus’ third expedition to the New World

sailed from Spain -- May 30, 1498

this was an expedition composed of six vessels

to bring supplies to his colony of La Navidad on the island of Hispaniola

and to further explore to the south

Columbus founded his second colony, Santo Domingo(in today’s Haiti)

this became the oldest European city in the Americas

Columbus left his brother Don Bartolome to act as governor of the New World

governmental control eventually broke down and was replaced

Spanish soldiers were granted a tract of land or an entire village with its inhabitants

this system was not called slavery -- so there was no reaction to it in Europe

Failure of Columbus and his two brothers as political leaders of the New World colony

along with the failure to produce gold and silver for Spain’s Royal Majesties

resulted in all three being clapped in irons

and sent back to Spain as prisoners [October 1500]

AMERIGO VESPUCCI OBSERVES THE EAST COAST OF SOUTH AMERICA

Amerigo Vespucci was a merchant in Venice, Italy

at the invitation of King Manuel of Portugal, Vespucci participated as observer

in several voyages that explored the east coast of South America

between 1499 and [1502]

striking the northeast coast at what is now (today’s Guyana)

Vespucci sailed southward, discovering the mouth of the (Amazon River)

Portuguese sailors reached 6° South before returning north

Vespucci sighted (today’s Trinidad) and the (Orinoco River)

he stopped at the Spanish colony of Santo Domingo before returning to Portugal

SPANISH COLONISTS DISCOVER GOLD ON THE ISLAND OF HISPANIOLA

Spanish governors of the colony of Santo Domingo made a major gold strike -- 1499

hundreds of natives were forced to mine for gold

punishment was used to make an example

even for minor offenses Spanish soldiers cut off the ears or noses of the natives

All Indians were forced to promise to give a tribute to the Catholic Sovereigns in Spain

every three months each person age fourteen and older paid a specified amount

when the tribute was paid, the native received a brass or copper token to wear

if no token could be displayed, hands were cut off -- Indians died of starvation

Forcing Indians to work in mines caused disrupted the native culture and the ecosystem

an enormous decrease in the native population took place

malnutrition became widespread as gardens and fields were ignored

rabbits and livestock brought in by the Spanish caused further devastation

European diseases carried by the sailors and animals became wide-spread

# 1500-1599

PEDRO ALVARES CABRAL SAILS FOR INDIA TO CONDUCT TRADE FOR PORTUGAL

King Manuel of Portugal sent Pedro Alvares Cabral on an expedition to India

Cabral’s thirteen ships left Lisbon, Portugal -- March 9, 1500

Cabral sailed far west of Vasco da Gama’s newly opened route around Africa

probably at the instigation of African pilots

guiding his ships along Africa’s west coast

Cabral sighted the east coast of South America (at today’s Brazil)[[44]](#footnote-44)

this was within the area designated to Portugal under the Treaty of Tordesillas

he claimed the region for Portugal and named it “Island of the True Cross”

(King Manuel renamed it Holy Cross

it was renamed Brazil after a dyewood found there)

Cabral stayed in (Brazil) for ten days then continued on his way around Africa to India

In a trip fraught with storms, shipwrecks (at the Cape of Good Hope) and fighting

(fifty of Cabral’s men were killed after an attack from Muslim traders in India

who did not want competition for their spice routes)

however, Cabral successfully traded for spices in Calicut, India

Cabral returned to Portugal with only four of the original thirteen ships -- June 23, 1501

but he delivered the news of his new discoveries in the New World

PEDRO ALVARES CABRAL EXPLORES THE NEW WORLD FOR PORTUGAL

Cabral sighted the east coast of South America (at today’s Brazil)

this was within the area designated to Portugal under the Treaty of Tordesillas

he claimed the region for Portugal and named it “Island of the True Cross”

(King Manuel renamed it Holy Cross

but it was renamed Brazil after a dyewood found there)

Cabral stayed in (Brazil) for ten days

and then continued on his way around Africa to India

In a trip fraught with storms, shipwrecks (at the Cape of Good Hope) and fighting

(fifty of Cabral’s men were killed after an attack from Muslim traders in India

who did not want competition for their spice routes)

however, Cabral successfully traded for spices in Calicut, India

Cabral returned to Portugal with only four of the original thirteen ships remaining

but he delivered the news of his new discoveries in the New World -- June 23, 1501

AMERIGO VESPUCCI TAKES A SECOND VOYAGE TO SOUTH AMERICA

Vespucci, representing Portugal, took a second trip to South America -- 1501-1502

he deduced, for the first time by anyone, that this was an unknown continent

Vespucci mapped his journey south along the east coast of South America

reaching Cananeia just south of (today’s Sao Paulo, Brazil)

Amerigo Vespucci published an account of his expeditions

accompanied by maps of the region

it is from these maps that Amerigo’s name became identified with the Americas

(two additional trips to South America were claimed by Vespucci

but an earlier voyage and a later voyage remain in dispute today)

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS’ FINAL EXPEDITIONS ENDS IN FAILURE

Christopher Columbus’ fourth expedition consisting of four old ships and 140 men

set sail -- May 11, 1502

purpose of this voyage was to find a strait linking the West Indies

with the Indian Ocean

Columbus was fifty-one years old and sick

he was no longer welcomed in Hispaniola

Columbus and his crew spent two months working along the coast of Central America

they were beset by winds and storm but when they arrived at (today’s Panama)

they learned of another ocean located a few days to the south

Columbus thought this was the strait for which he searched

(however, the Isthmus of Panama is blocked by a mountain range)

natives possessed a great deal of gold which they traded with Columbus

Columbus sailed along the southern Central American coast

but his ships, damaged by a hurricane and termites, fell apart while exploring

Columbus and his men were stranded on the island of (Jamaica) for about a year

before they were rescued

Christopher Columbus returned to Spain for the final time -- November 7, 1504

each expedition led by Christopher Columbus ended in failure for him

and disaster for the natives he contacted

as the Spanish prospered, Indians died from disease, massacre and overwork

almost all of the six million Caribbean Indians were dead in a few years

sugar and mining industries grew, but as the supply of Indian labor shrank

(Christopher Columbus died in obscurity at Valladolid, Spain [May 21, 1506]

but his relatives maintained the family title: Admiral of the Ocean Sea

he believed to the end that he had reached Asia)

Age of Exploration was at an end

END OF THE **“**AGE OF DISCOVERY**”** IS REACHED

Western hemisphere history is divided into pre-Columbia (before Columbus)

and post-Columbia (after Columbus) eras

Europe established colonies in the New World to exploit the land and mineral wealth

native people and their thriving cultures were overthrown

Crops, animals, ideas and diseases began to cross the Atlantic Ocean regularly

European diseases inadvertently inflicted on natives led to their near extermination

as they had no immunity to the germs

likewise, syphilis began to plague Spain and Italy for the first time

almost half of all crops now in production in Europe originally were American

adding corn to African died caused a huge population growth

adding potatoes to European diet caused a population explosion

more than two hundred drugs derived from plants discovered by Indians

were taken to Europe

“AGE OF EXPLORATION” REPLACES THE “AGE OF DISCOVERY”

(Spain and Portugal had established the claim of discovery of the New World

Portugal was limited in its new territory

by the papal bull issued by Pope Alexander VI [1493]

and by the Treaty of Tordesillas between Spain and Portugal [1494]

Spain possessed the vast majority of land in the New World by right of discovery

while more discoveries were inevitable, Spain shifted its attention to exploration

which placed defenders of their claims at the sight

Spanish military explorers, conquistadores (conquerors), began to search for wealth

gold and silver which could be extracted and delivered for the glory of Spain

SPANISH IMPORTS SLAVES TO THE NEW WORLD

European domination extended across the nations of Africa

and reached the shores of the Americas

African slaves were imported to the New World

by Christopher Columbus’ son -- 1505

Africans died as quickly as the Native Americans

Slave trade, first Indians and then Africans, forced Europe to take notice of race

race became a significant human characteristic used to justify the slave trade

it was useful to think badly of those intended to be exploited

although this “cognitive dissonance” was counter

to previously held attitudes and beliefs

transatlantic slave trade created a racial “underclass” in America

TRADE BETWEEN EUROPE AND THE EAST IS DOMINATED BY MERCHANTS

Merchant ships sailed from Naples, Genoa, Pisa and other Mediterranean ports

they journeyed to India, China and The Indies

(the islands of southeastern Asia -- Indochina)

trade goods were carried by sea where possible and over land where necessary

to exotic places at the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea

and from these exotic places back

but Venice on the Adriatic Sea became the leading European trading city

Merchants of Venice dominated three trade routes to the East:

•Northern Route -- the Silk Road

Venetian ships carried cloth, furs, metals and European products to Constantinople

before being transported across the Black and Caspian seas

this route was long and difficult as it was necessary to cross

the deserts and mountains of Central Asia where goods were carried by camel

this severely limited the goods that could be transported

Venetian ships brought back to Italy from Constantinople silks, rugs, jewels,

spices such as pepper and cinnamon and other Asian goods

•Central route -- a variation on the Silk Road

allowed the use of ships on the Mediterranean Sea and Persian Gulf

but pack animals were necessary to carry goods from Palestine

across the Arab Peninsula to the Persian Gulf then by ship to India, China,

the East Indies (Borneo) and the Spice Islands (Indonesia)

•Southern route -- Trans-Arabian Route

used the Mediterranean Sea to Alexandra, Egypt

an overland trip of about 120 miles was required across the Arab Peninsula

(at today’s Suez) to the Red Sea

then by ship to India, the East Indies, the Spice Islands and China

Ottoman Turks had every reason to keep the old Eastern trade open

PORTUGAL TAKE CONTROL OF EAST-WEST TRADE

Portugal’s navy captured the Persian Gulf island of Hormuz from the Turks -- 1507

this conquest gave Portugal full control of the trade between India and Europe

that passed through the Persian Gulf following the Silk Roads Central Route

Spain, very concerned over the growing power and wealth of Portugal,

turned to the New World as a new source of power and wealth

EXPLOITING AMERICAN RESOURCES TRANSFORMED EUROPE

Rise of northern European nations caused a shift in the power base

away from the Mediterranean Sea

Italian trade suffered a dramatic decline as trade goods by the ship load

arrived in Portugal from the East and in Spain from the New World

Portuguese and Spanish trade allowed other nations

to acquire a portion of the new-found wealth

as they expanded the number of nations that became their trading partners

Soon to follow were acts of piracy by other nations, especially Great Britain,

who hunted Spanish trade routes and plundered Spanish treasure ships

carrying gold, silver and treasure from the American colonies

back to the Mother Country

European political and religious leaders quickly amassed wealth

gold and silver from America replaced land as the basis for wealth and status

and increased the power and prestige of the new merchant class

American gold fueled 400% inflation in Europe

this, in turn, eroded the economies of most non-European countries

and eroded local economies while Europe developed a global market system

to acquire goods and even more wealth

Africa suffered from European exploitation

inhabitants suffered from economic depression

Africa’s Gold Coast (today’s Ghana) could not compete with America

as source of wealth

ancient trans-Sahara trade routes linking Central Africa with North Africa

collapsed

CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE de LEON BECOMES GOVERNOR OF PUERTO RICO

Juan Ponce de Leon he had been a member of Christopher Columbus’ second expedition

along with some 1200 sailors, colonists and soldiers

Ponce de Leon was one of 200 “gentlemen volunteers” (guests who did not work)

Juan Ponce de Leon was appointed governor of Puerto Rico by the Spanish Crown -- 1510

on his second visit to the New World he led three ships and about 200 men

de Leon put the natives to work mining gold

Ponce de Leon distributed the natives among the Spanish settlers keeping many for himself

Indians were put to work growing food crops and mining for gold

Spaniards treated the natives very harshly

newly introduced diseases like smallpox and measles

took a severe toll on the local population

PORTUGUESE MARINERS REACH MAINLAND CHINA BY SEA

With new wealth arriving in Portugal from the Central trade route with the East

the nation turned its attention to reaching the Far East by ship

Portuguese explorer Jorge Alvares is credited as the first European explorer

to reach China by sea

Alvares made initial contact when he landed on Southern China’s Nei Lingding

(which became known in Europe as Lantin Island)

Alvarez claimed his discovery in the name of the Portugal’s King Manuel -- 1513

he negotiated to rent the port of Macau from the Chinese hoping to establish trade

Portugal administered the city under Chinese authority and sovereignty (until [1887]

when Macau became a colony of the Portuguese empire

Macau was transferred back to China [December 20, 1999])

Portugal now had access to an all-water route to the riches of the East

and ships could carry more goods than a caravan of camels

Europeans became very confused regarding where they had landed

Alvares identified the region as China

but Marco Polo, who traveled overland [1271-1295], had named the region Cathay

(Europe will settle on China as the name for the mainland of the Far East)

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE de LEON EXPLORES (TODAY’S FLORIDA)

Rumors of undiscovered islands to the northwest of Hispaniola had reached Spain

King Ferdinand urged Ponce de Leon to explore these new lands

de Lon would be governor for life of any lands he discovered

Juan Ponce de Leon equipped three ships with at least 200 men at his own expense

his expedition set out from Puerto Rico -- March 4, 1513

he sighted land which he named it La Florida

(Festival of Flowers for the Easter season)

in addition to gold, Ponce de Leon may have also been searching

for the fabled “Fountain of Youth” to cure his aging

unsuccessful in his search he returned to Puerto Rico

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR VASCO NUNEZ de BALBOA SIGHTS THE PACIFIC OCEAN

(Vasco Nunez de Balboa had accompanied Spanish conquistadors in search of gold

along the east coast of South America where they were forced to abandon their leaky ship

after this unsuccessful effort Balboa tried farming in the Spanish colony of Hispaniola

this also proved to be unsuccessful

Balboa and his dog stowed away on a Spanish ship traveling from Hispaniola

to Spain’s new colony of San Sebastian on the east coast of Panama

when the expedition arrived they discovered the colony was burned to the ground

Balboa convinced Spaniards to travel southwest where he had previously visited -- 1513

Spain’s first successful colony in Panama, Santa Maria de la Antigua del Darien

was founded

Balboa sailed with hundreds of Spaniards and Indians from this colony

to the Derien Peninsula (today’s Colon, Panama)

Balboa led an overland expedition west through very dense rainforests

fighting with local Indians along the way

Balboa attacked an Indian village killing 600 natives -- September 23, 1513

he captured a large supply of food

and appropriated a large treasure of gold and pearls

after the battle those men not wounded or too exhausted to travel

entered the nearby mountains

according to information gathered from the natives,

an ocean could be seen from the summit

Balboa traveled ahead with his dog to the summit -- before noon September 25, 1513

far away on the horizon the waters of an undiscovered sea could be seen

Five days later, Balboa reached the Gulf of San Miguel on the Pacific Ocean -- September 29

Balboa named the body of water the South Sea

he waded into the salt water and ceremonially took possession of the ocean

and any coasts that it might wash in the name of Spain

Balboa built ships on the Pacific side of Panama and sent expeditions north

his concluded California was probably an island

Balboa reported seeing black slaves in an Indian village

Indians said they had been captured from a nearby black community

In a letter to Ferdinand, King of Spain

he noted how easily gold could be obtained in the New World

**“Gold was so plentiful that the natives ‘do not care to keep it in baskets’; ...all the rivers in these mountains contain gold: and... they have very large lumps in great abundance. Their method of collecting the gold is by going into the water and gathering it in their baskets. They also scrape it up in the beds of streams, when these are dry.”[[45]](#footnote-45)**

(Balboa was later falsely charged with treason against Spain

he had been framed by a friend, Arias de Avila

Balboa was found guilty and was publicly beheaded in Acla, Panama [January1519])

PACIFIC OCEAN BECOMES A FOCAL POINT FOR EUROPEAN EXPLORERS

Map found in Turkey dated 1513 was said to be based on material

from the library of Alexander the Great -- King of Macedonia [336 BCE- 323 BCE]

he created one of the largest empires of the ancient world

this map included coastline details of South America and Antarctica[[46]](#footnote-46)

it is apparent early European explorers had reached the Americas many times

Based on this and other information systematic expeditions were formed for map-making

but the chief purpose of these voyages was discovery of a passage across the continent

Mythical Strait of Anian as described by Marco Polo was assumed to exist

New World was thought to be an archipelago in which nature had placed islands

so close together that a ship could not pass through

PORTUGAL ESTABLISHES TRADE RELATIONS WITH CHINA

Portugal’s King Manuel commissioned a diplomatic and trade mission

to Canton (today’s Guangzhou) China -- 1517

this relationship lasted until the death of the Chinese Emperor [1519]

Reports had reached the Chinese court of the terrible behavior of the Portuguese

toward the Chinese

newly formed Ming Chinese court became less interested in foreign trade

PORTUGESE TRADERS ARE NOT WELCOMED IN CHINA

Continuing their bad behavior Portuguese sailors and traders raided and pillaged

villages around the trading posts in Canton (today’s Guangzhou) China

Emperor of China ruled that all Portuguese encountered everywhere

should be killed on the spot

more than 800 Portuguese citizens were killed

these massacres resulted in the Portuguese survivors fleeing to Macau, China

Relations improved between the Portuguese and Chinese Ming Dynasty

when the Portuguese aided China in eliminating coastal pirates

Portuguese traders were allowed by Chinese officials to anchor their ships in Macau’s harbor

they could carry out trading activities, but they could not stay onshore

SPANISH CONQUISTADORS CAPTURE THE AZTEC INDIAN EMPIRE

New Spain (Mexico) became Spain’s chief source of treasure used to expand Spain’s Empire

Hernan Cortes, an educated Spanish aristocrat, settled on the island of Cuba

and became a rancher

Spain sent an expedition to explore the coast of New Spain that returned a favorable report

this sparked Cortes’ dreams of great wealth

Spanish Governor of Cuba, Diego Velazquez chose Cortes

to lead an expedition to establish a colony in New Spain -- 1518

but the governor soon changed his mind and cancelled the expedition

Cortes defied the governor and led a force of 600 men and about twenty horses

to explore the Yucatan Peninsula and attempt to establish a settlement there

he established the town of La Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz

to prevent any possibility of desertion and retreat Cortes burned all of his ships

Cortes learned from local natives about the fabulous riches of the Aztec Empire -- 1519

he marched his troops into the interior to invade the land of the Aztecs

Cortes forced an alliance with the Aztec Indians of Tlaxcala

there he learned about their customs, culture and religion

millions of native common people were ruled by the kings of local city-states

these kings were in turn led by the Emperor Moctezuma II from the capital city

he became most interested in Quetzalcoatl the “Winged God - Feather Serpent”

a light-skinned, bearded God of Civilization revered by the Aztecs

and due to return to the people in this particular year

Cortes marched further inland and reached the city of Tenochtitlan

capital of the Aztec Empire

light-skinned, bearded Cortes appeared to be the god Quetzalcoatl returned to the people

Cortes easily marched his troops into the city and captured Moctezuma

who was forced to swear allegiance to King Carlos V of Spain

Cortes claimed New Spain in the name of King Carlos King Carlos V

when Spanish Governor of Cuba, Diego Velazquez learned how Cortes

had exceeded his authority he sent 1,400 soldiers to arrest Hernan Cortes

whom he disliked personally

SPAIN ATTEMPTS TO FIND A SAFE ALL-WATER TRADE ROUTE TO THE EAST

Ferdinand Magellanwas a Portuguese explorer who served King Carlos V of Spain

Magellan was sent to find an all-water route to the “Spice Islands” (modern Indonesia)

Five Ships under Magellan’s command, *Trinidad*, *San Antonio*, *Concepción*, *Victoria*

and *Santiago* left Seville, Spain -- August 10, 1519

they arrived off the coast of South America at the Portuguese territory of Brazil

Magellan avoided land and anchored near (today’s Rio de Janeiro, Brazil) -- December 13

there the crew resupplied before sailing south along South America’s east coast

while scouting the route the *Santiago* was wrecked in a storm

Four ships began an arduous 373-mile long passage through (today’s Strait of Magellan)

scouting ahead with the ship *Concepcion*, the *San Antonio* deserted and returned to Spain

three remaining ships entered the South Pacific

Magellan’s expedition was the first to sail from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean

he named the waters the “Mar Pacifico” (peaceful waters)

because of its apparent stillness

Ferdinand Magellan’s ships reached the islands of the (Mariana) chain and (Guam)

before they arrived at the Philippines with 150 of his crewmen left

Magellan was killed in battle with the natives of the Philippines -- March 17, 1520

additional casualties left the expedition with too few men to sail

all three of the remaining ships

they abandoned and burned the *Concepcon*

Now under the command of Juan Sebastian Elcano, Magellan’s two remaining ships,

*Trinidad* and *Victoria,* sailed by 115 men, continued on to the Spice Islands

where they successfully traded for valuable spices

Elcano decided to attempt to continue to sail around the globe

this route was unanticipated by their Portuguese rivals

soon, however, the flagship *Trinidad* began to take on water

her crew tried to discover and repair the leak, but failed

*Trinidad* would need to spend considerable time being overhauled,

but the *Victoria* was not large enough to accommodate all the surviving crew

therefore, the *Victoria* with some of the crew sailed west for Spain

*Trinidad* followed several weeks behind

*Trinidad* was captured by the Portuguese and was eventually wrecked in a storm

while at anchor under Portuguese control

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR HERNAN CORTES IS FORCED OUT OF TENOCHT ITLAN

Learning of the arrival of Spanish Governor of Cuba, Diego Velazquez’s soldiers

Hernan Cortes defeated the governor’s troops in a surprise attack

Cortes convinced the survivors of the attack to join him in the conquest of the Aztecs

While Cortes had been away his soldiers had slaughtered 600 Aztec nobles

as he returned to Tenochtitlan he and his soldiers were attacked by Aztec natives -- 1520

Cortes attempted to calm the Aztecs by releasing Montezuma

but the Aztecs stoned him to death

Hernan Cortes and his soldiers were forced out of Tenochtitlan

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR HERNAN CORTES CAPTURES THE AZTEC EMPIRE

Hernan Cortes returned once again to Tenochtitlan with additional reinforcements

because he was still greatly outnumbered, he laid siege to the city

Small pox brought by the Spanish troops stuck the Aztec population

Tenochtitlan fell to Cortes -- 1521

Cortes had conquered five million Aztecs with less than 1000 soldiers

Soon after, he began to build *Mexico City* on the Aztec ruins

many Europeans arrived in Mexico City

it soon became the most important European city in North America

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE de LEON RETURNED TO FLORIDA

Juan Ponce de Leon organized a colonizing expedition using two ships -- 1521

that consisted of some 200 men, including priests, farmers and artisans,

fifty horses and other domestic animals and farming implements

they landed on the southwest coast of Florida

In an attack by Native Americans Ponce de Leon was injured by a poisoned arrow

that struck his thigh

he and his colonists sailed back to Cuba where he died of his wound

PORTUGAL CONTINUES TO ATTEMPT TO TRADE WITH CHINA

Several more Portuguese trading ships reached the coast of Canton (Guangzhou) China

but were driven away by the now hostile Ming Dynasty authorities -- 1521-1522

When the Portuguese committed even more atrocities, Chinese responded with violent force

Chinese Imperial Government imprisoned, tortured and executed several Portuguese

FERDINAND MAGELLAN’S CREW SAILS AROUND THE GLOBE

Juan Sebastian Elcano and the remaining seventeen men of the *Victoria* arrived in Spain

almost exactly three years after they departed -- September 6, 1522

Men of Magellan’s expedition were the first to circumnavigate the globe

they proved the world is round and that and the East could be reached by sailing West

they had discovered the true size of the Earth and that America is not part of Asia

however, this exploit was too long and too dangerous to be of economic consequence

HERNAN CORTES BECOMES GOVERNOR OF NEW SPAIN

Because of his conquests and all the gold and jewels he had collected,

Cortes was very popular back home in Spain

Charles V named Hernan Cortes governor and captain general of New Spain -- 1523

Cortes constantly sought to consolidate his power, increase his wealth and restrain his enemies

he promoted the early sugar industry

he sponsored exploration, the building of more cities

and the Roman Catholic evangelization of the native population

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR CONQUERS THE NATIVES OF CENTRAL AMERICA

El Capitan Pedro de Alvarado y Contreras had participated in the conquest of Cuba

and the conquest of the Aztecs led by Hernan Cortes

Pedro de Alvarado was sent out by New Spain Governor Cortes

with 120 horsemen, 300-foot soldiers and several hundred Indian auxiliary fighters

he was engaged in the conquest of the highlands of Guatemala from 1523-[1527]

these Spanish efforts were firmly resisted by the indigenous people

although renowned for his skill as a soldier, Alvarado also was known for his cruelty

Alvarado’s inhumanity is documented

mass murders were committed in the conquest of the native peoples of New Spain

he enslaved natives and murdered them by means such as hanging, burning

and throwing them alive to vicious dogs

Alvarado was wounded on his left thigh leaving him handicapped the rest of is life

he abandoned the effort to subjugate the natives and appointed his brother,

Gonzalo de Alvarado, to continue the task attacking the natives -- 1525

this invasion led to the city of San Salvador being established

Gonzalo de Alvarado’s second effort brought the natives of Central America

under Spanish control -- 1528

With the conquest of Guatemala completed, El Capitan Pedro de Alvarado y Contreras

was appointed governor of Guatemala -- 1528

he kept this position until his accidental death in a later battle [July 4, 1541]

Pedro de Alvarado is considered to be the conqueror of most of Central America

(El Salvador, Guatemala and Honduras)

HERNAN CORTES RETURNS TO SPAIN

Spanish King Carlos V suspended Hernan Cortes as governor of New Spain [1526]

he returned to Spain -- 1528

while he kept much of his power, he was increasingly opposed by his enemies

(Cortes convinced King Carlos V to allow him to return to New Spain [1530]

but with less power and independence that he had before

he was given the title “captain general” rather than governor

Cortes explored the northwestern part of (Mexico)

and discovered the Baja California peninsula

after exploring the Pacific coast of (Mexico)

Cortes returned to Spain and died near Seville [1547])

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR FRANCISCO PIZARRO CONQUERS THE INCA INDIANS

(Francisco Pizarro was an illegitimate child who grew up illiterate

unskilled, he traveled with Vasco Nunez de Balboa during discovery of the Pacific Ocean

Pizarro also led the soldiers who later arrested Balboa on false charges)

(Reports of Peru’s riches and Cortes’ success in New Spain tantalized Pizarro

he attempted two expeditions to conquer the Inca Empire [1524] and [1526]

both failed as a result of native hostilities, bad weather and lack of provisions)

Pizarro returned to Spain to appeal directly to King Carlos V for funds for a third expedition

his plea was successful and he received not only a license for the proposed expedition

but considerable authority over any lands conquered during the venture

he was joined by family and friends as his third expedition left Panama -- 1530[

When hostile natives along the coast of Peru threatened the expedition,

Pizarro moved inland and founded the first Spanish settlement there, San Miguel de Piura

however, the leader of the Inca natives refused the tolerate the Spanish

their great ruler, Inca (Emperor) Atahualpa attempted to defend his people and land

Pizarro killed thousands of Incas -- Atahualpa was ambushed and captured

Pizarro demanded a ransom for his release

Atahualpa’s subjects filled a room with gold, but Pizarro charged him with crimes

although Pizzaro’s associates thought he was overstepping his authority

the conquistador had Atahualpa strangled -- July 26, 1533

Pizarro entered the Inca capital of Cuzco -- the conquest of Peru was complete

Pizarro founded the city of Lima [1535] -- he considered this his greatest achievement

quarrels between Pizarro and his longtime comrade-in-arms Diego Almagro II

resulted in an hour of carnage won by Pizarro’s men

Almagro was captured and executed

embittered, Almagro’s son assassinated Pizarro in Lima [June 26, 1541]

the conqueror of Peru was laid to rest in the Lima Cathedral

Conquistador Francisco Pizarro’s conquest of the Inca Empire had given Spain

control of Western South America and access to the Southern Pacific Ocean

JAQUES CARTIER LEADS A FRENCH EXPEDITION TO THE NEW WORLD

Jacques Cartier was born in Saint-Malo, France [1491]

he was introduced to King Francis by the abbot of the Mont Saint Michel monastery

King Frances commissioned Cartier to explore the New World

with the hope of finding a “Northwest Passage” to the to the wealthy markets of Asia

Cartier set sail from Saint-Malo, France with a crew of convicts paroled from jails

and impressed (placed) into maritime service -- April 20, 1534

he crossed the Atlantic Ocean in twenty days and reached Newfoundland

Cartier explored parts of Newfoundland (first discovered byJohn Cabot [1497])

and the Gulf of St. Lawrence (first discovered by the Vikings [1000])

Cartier’s first two contacts with Native Americans were brief

his third encounter was with a party of St. Lawrence Iroquois Indians

that resulted in some trade

Cartier placed a cross ten meters across on the shore of (today’s Gaspe Bay)

that bore the words: “Long Live the King of France”

he took possession of the territory in the name of Francis

just as John Cabot had done for England before him [1497]

Jacques Cartier returned to Saint-Malo, France -- September 1534

sure that he had reached an Asian island

he brought two Iroquois Indian captives with him to France

he was the first European to describe and map the Gulf of Saint Lawrence

and the shores of the Saint Lawrence River

While Spain continued to enslave the natives and extract minerals from the Americas

French explorers beginning with Jacques Cartier developed the fur trade with the Indians

Frenchmen took up fishing the Grand Banks of Newfoundland developed land bases

JACQUES CARTIER’S SECOND VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA FOR FRANCE

Jacques Cartier set sail on a second voyage with three ships, 110 men

and his two Iroquois Indian captives -- May 19, 1535

When he reached the St. Lawrence River he sailed up-river 1,000 miles

reaching the area of (today’s Montreal) with his smallest ship

he was greeted by a crowd of over a thousand Native Americans

who came to the river’s edge

Cartier’s expedition could proceed no further as the river was blocked by rapids

he was certain that the river was the Northwest Passage and that these rapids

were all that was preventing him from sailing to China,

he named the La Chine rapids (French for China)

(later the town at the rapids was named La Chine, Quebec)

JACQUEST CARTIER SPENDS THE WINTER IN NORTHERN NORTH AMERICA

Cartier and his men prepared for the winter by strengthening their fort, stacking firewood

and salting down game and fish

Scurvy broke out first among the Iroquois natives and then among the French

Cartier learned from the local chief, Donnacona, that a concoction

made from a tree (probably *arbor vitae*) would cure scurvy

with this treatment eighty-five Frenchmen survived the winter

Cartier decided to take Chief Donnacona with him back to France to describe

the country to the north that the native said was full of gold, rubies and other treasures

After an arduous trip down the St. Lawrence River and a three-week Atlantic crossing,

Cartier and his men arrived in Saint-Malo, France -- July 15, 1536

CONQUISTADOR HERNANDO DE SOTO EXPLORES EASTERN NORTH AMERICA

(Hernando de Soto first arrived in the New World [1514]

he accompanied Spanish Conquistador Francisco Pizarro

during the attack on the Inca Empire

de Soto had guarded the Inca Emperor Atahualpa

and taught the native to play chess [1533]

while de Soto was on a scouting expedition Pizarro had Atahualpa strangled

de Soto received a portion of the vast storehouse of gold

delivered to ransom the chief)

De Soto returned to Spain with an enormous share of the Spanish conquest of the Incas

even though he could have retired a wealthy man after collecting so much treasure

he decided to continue exploring

he was named governor of Cuba by Spanish King Carlos V -- 1537

and was given the assignment to colonize North American for Spain within four years

Hernando de Soto set out to explore North America

he arrived on the west coast of Florida -- May 30, 1539

with ten ships carrying over 600 soldiers, priests and explorers

(for nearly four years he led his men in a fruitless far-ranging search for gold

over what is now the southeastern United States**)**

DE ULLOA WAS SENT BY CORTES TO EXPLORE THE COAST OF NEW SPAIN

Spanish Conquistador Francisco de Ulloa journeyed with three ships

to explore the coast of New Spain and northward -- 1539

he discovered and named the Sea of Cortes (today’s Gulf of California)

after reaching the head of the Gulf they turned south to the tip of Baja California

Ulloa rounded the tip of land and sailed North into the Pacific Ocean

one of Ulloa ships became separated from the other two and returned south

Ulloa continued to sailed north accompanied by his second ship

to about 28º north just south of Cedros Island, Mexico half way up the Baja peninsula

Ulloa and his flag ship never returned from this portion of the trip

however, his accompanying vessel returned to New Spain -- 1540

JACQUES CARITER TAKES HIS THIRD VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA FOR FRANCE

Cartier once again departed Saint-Malo on his third voyage

this time with five ships -- May 23, 1541

any thought of finding a passage to Asia was forgotten

France’s goals now were find the land of gold, rubies and other treasurers

and to establish a permanent settlement along the St. Lawrence River

Convicts and other colonists were landed,

those cattle that had survived three months aboard ship were turned loose,

earth was tilled for a kitchen garden -- cabbage, turnip and lettuce seeds were planted

Charlesbourg-Royal, a fortified settlement, was built and named

(at present-day Cap-Rouge, Quebec)

another fort was also built for added protection on the cliff overlooking the settlement

Men began collecting what they believed to be diamonds and gold

(but which upon return to France were discovered to be merely quartz crystals

and iron pyrite -- fool’s gold)

Europeans brought not only settlers and treasure hunters and new religion to the New World,

they also brought alcohol, disease and weapons which changed the natives lives forever

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR HERNANDO De SOTO REACHES THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER

De Soto’s exact route is often in doubt but his expedition seems to have passed through

(today’s Florida, Georgia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Alabama and Mississippi

he even crossed the Mississippi River into the American Southwest) -- 1541

in his search for gold and silver he made brutal contact with five Native American tribes

Cherokees, Seminoles, Creeks, Appalachians and Choctaws

winter 1541-[1542] was spent west of the Mississippi River

(in today’s Arkansas and Louisiana)

FRANCE’S JACQUES CARITER CONTINUES EXPLORATION OF NORTH AMERICA

Cartier left the colony of Charlesbourg-Royal using longboats

for a reconnaissance to find the land of wealth -- 1541

When he returned to Charlesbourg-Royal, Cartier found the situation ominous

Iroquois no longer made friendly visits or peddled fish and game,

now they prowled about in a sinister manner

Native Americans attacked and killed about thirty-five of the settlers

before the Frenchmen could retreat behind their fortifications

(For the final time Cartier sailed for France [early June 1542]

Jacques Cartier was the first to document the name “Canada”

to designate the territory on the shores of the St. Lawrence River

this name was derived from the Huron-Iroquois word **“kanata”** [village]

which was incorrectly interpreted as a native term for the newly discovered land)

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR HERNANDO de SOTO DIES

Hernando de Soto died of a fever -- May 21, 1542

his body was sunk in the Mississippi River to protect it from the natives

De Soto’s men, now led by Luis Moscoso de Alvarado, descended the Mississippi River

from its confluence with the Arkansas River to the Gulf of Mexico in nineteen days

Hernando de Soto’s men had discovered and mapped lower Mississippi River area

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR CABRILLO EXPLORES THE CALIFORNIA COAST

Spain heard rumors that Portugal discovered a strait that linked the Atlantic with the Pacific

perhaps this was the Strait of Anian identified in Marco Polo’s account of his travels

Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo had been a conquistador under Hernan Cortes

his success in mining gold in Guatemala made him

one of the richest of the conquistadores in Mexico

Cabrillo was then commissioned by the new Viceroy of New Spain, Antonio de Mendoza,

to lead a three-ship expedition up the Pacific coast to 30° North

in search of trade opportunities and to find a way to China

or to find the mythical Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

Cabrillo accompanied by his pilot Bartolome Ferrelo (sometimes Ferrer)

set out from Navidad, New Spain to explore the coast of California -- June 27, 1542

Cabrillo reached Cedros Island midway up Baja California as had Francisco de Ulloa [1539]

Cabrillo was the first to record the name California,

but that name was probably well known

Cabrillo continued north into uncharted waters discovering and giving Spanish names

to such places as San Diego Bay, Santa Catalina Island, San Pedro Bay

and Santa Monica Bay

he reached as far north as the (Russian River) -- (today’s Sacramento area)

before autumn storms forced them to turn back to Southern California

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR CABRILLO WINTERS ON SANTA CATALINA ISLAND

Cabrillo and his three ships spent the winter at (Santa Catalina Island)

making repairs -- 1542-1543

while trying to rescue some of his men from an attack Cabrillo stepped out of his boat

he stumbled onto a jagged rock and splintered his shin -- around Christmas Eve

his injury became infected and developed gangrene -- he died January 3, 1543

Cabrillo’s second-in-command, Bartolome Ferrelo, had been ordered by Cabrillo

to **“Sail Northward at all hazard”[[47]](#footnote-47)**

Ferrelo continued the voyage of discovery as far north as 43°

where he saw the coast of (Cape Blanco on today’s Oregon coast)

excessive cold, lack of provisions, sickness and deteriorating conditions of his vessel

forced Ferrelo to return south

Cabrillo-Ferrelo expedition had added 800 miles of mapped landfall for Spain

however, none of the Cabrillo-Ferrelo expedition charts appear to have survived

Spanish policy was to keep geographic details secret

so they could not be used by their enemies

SPAIN’S INTEREST TURNS FROM EXPLORATION TO TRADE WITH THE EAST

Spain decided to concentrate her efforts in developing commercial interests in Asia

partly due to political difficulties with England as Spanish Catholic Prince Philip

married English Catholic Queen Mary and became King of England and Ireland

Philip and“Bloody Mary”persecuted English Protestants

in their own version of the inquisition

partly because the King’s astrologer predicted little gold would be found

outside of the tropics Spain saw no pressing need to establish colonies

leaving Portugal free to roam the Pacific Ocean

SPAIN REACHES THE ISLANDS OF THE PHILIPPINES

Viceroy of New Spain Antonia de Mendoza

was the first New World colonial administrator

he commissioned explorer Ruy Lopez de Villalobos to sail to the West

in search of islands

Villalobos led a fleet of six galleons from New Spain (Mexico)

with about 400 men [November 1, 1542]

small islands (today’s Eniwetok and Ulithi) were reached -- January 1543

as the expedition continued on, one of the ships became separated during a severe storm

Villalobos reached the Philippines -- February 29, 1543

Villalobos named the island group Las Islas Filipinas (The Philippine Islands)

in honor of Spanish Prince Philip II

extreme hunger forced them to stay for thirty-two days as they searched for food

unexpectedly the lost galleon appeared with a load of rice and other foodstuffs

two ships were sent to resupply where food had been discovered

Arrival of Villalobos’ fleet in the Philippines was challenged in a letter

received from Jorge de Castro, Portuguese governor of the Spice Islands

Villalobos responded in a letter that they were not trespassing

as they were within the Line of Demarcation

Driven from their place of refuge by hostile natives, hunger and a shipwreck,

Lopez de Villalobos was forced to abandon the expedition

he and his crew members sought shelter from the Portuguese in the Spice Islands

however, quarreling led to the imprisonment of the Spanish expedition

Ruy Lopez de Villalobos died in prison --1544

Some 117 remaining Spanish crew members survived prison

100 of Villalobos’ crewmen returned to Lisbon, Spain

one survivor, Guido de Lavezaris, produced a manuscript

of Magellan’s [1519-1522] voyage

(it was discovered in the 20th century and was published [1920])

CONQUISTADOR HERNAN CORTES RETURNS TO SPAIN A HERO

Cortes returned to Spain and was be given the title “Marques”for his conquest of the Aztecs

Spanish officials grew to fear Cortes

because of the vast power he had developed in New Spain

he was denied any government post and his reputation was be destroyed

he died in disgrace near Seville, Spain -- December 2, 1547

BEAVER HATS BECOME THE RAGE IN EUROPE

Soft yet resilient beaver pelts could be used to make hats of a variety of shapes

from the still-familiar top hat to the British navy cocked hat worn by admirals

and popular colonial tri-corner cocked hat

these hats dominated European fashion 1550-[1850]

no self-respecting European was without one

MUSCOVY COMPANY IS CHARTERED IN ENGLAND

Muscovy Company (also called the Russian Company or the Muscovy Trading Company)

was an English joint stock trading company that was chartered --1555

Richard Chancellor, founder of the company, navigated for his fleet of three ships

as they set out for Moscow, Russia

Muscovy Company had a monopoly on trade between England and Muscovy

(Moscow, Russia)

this company undertook the search for the Northwest Passage to China

PORTUGAL ESTABLISHES A COLONY IN MACAU, CHINA

Local Chinese officials allowed the Portuguese to settle in Macau, China

and use the port as an outpost from which they could conduct trade -- 1557

laws of Portugal were applied to the colony

Using Macau, the Portuguese acted as intermediaries in the trade of Chinese goods

for spices and other Asian goods to be sold all across Europe

unfortunately, the Portuguese in Macau were regularly cut off

from the rest of their Asian empire

Diplomatic relations between Portugal and China were reestablished

when Lionel de Sousa became the second Portuguese Governor of Macau -- 1558

SPANISH SHIPS CARRY WEALTH EXTRACTED FROM THE AMERICAS TO SPAIN

Stretch of coastline along the northern coast of South America,

across Central America and the Caribbean and into the southern part of North America

was controlled by Spain beginning in the mid-16th Century (and lasting 200 years)

this region became known as the “Spanish Main”

Spanish colonies in the Americas stretched across the huge swath of land

which was rich in gold, minerals, spices and a variety of other exotic treasures

Spain exported minerals and other natural resources in large treasure ships, galleons,

which often traveled in fleets for protection

By watching a few key ports along the Spanish Main, pirates and other raiders

discovered the best time to strike the unprotected treasure ships

ENGLAND COMES OF AGE AS A NATION

(Period of English history which centered on King Henry VIII was brutal and confusing

Henry believed he needed a son who would inherit the throne of England and Ireland

he had two daughters, Elizabeth and Mary

(Henry divorced two of his six wives, Catherine Parr and Anne Boleyn,

although divorce was not accepted in the Catholic Church

two others, Catherine Howard and Anne of Cleves, were executed,

Queen Jane Seymour died and his final wife, Catherine of Aragon, was widowed)

Catholic Pope Clement VII excommunicated [removed]

England’s King Henry from the Catholic Church

Henry’s daughters Elizabeth was raised as a Protestant [protestor]

while Mary was raised Catholic

Henry’s third wife, Jane Seymour, bore him a son Edward who sickly

after Henry VIII’s death [1547], Edward VI reigned as King of England and Ireland

until his death [1553])

(Death of Edward VI threw England and Ireland into political turmoil

Henry VIII’s Catholic daughter, Mary Tudor, married Spain’s Prince Philip II

who also was Catholic

Mary became Queen of England and Philip became King of England

but she was seen as a threat by English Protestants

Elizabeth, a Protestant and Mary’s half-sister, was the choice of Protestants

to be queen of England

a series of uprisings pitted Catholics and Protestants against each other

earning the Catholic queen the title “Bloody Mary”)

Queen Mary imprisoned Elizabeth in the Tower of London

Elizabeth was released after a few months

Bloody Mary died and Philip II lost the title King of England -- November 1558

leaving the Protestant Elizabeth to become Queen of England

ELIZABETH BECOMES QUEEN OF ENGLAND

As Elizabeth set out to rule she depended heavily on her trusted advisers -- November 1558

she established an English Protestant church and became its Supreme Governor

(this church evolved into the Church of England)

It was expected that Elizabeth would marry and produce an heir to continue the Tudor line

despite numerous courtships she never married but used her royal position

to court favorable agreements with European kings to advance her empire

she ruled a relatively peaceful nation for forty-five years

Elizabeth’s reign was known as the “Elizabethan Age” is remembered for two achievements:

•English drama, led by playwrights such as William Shakespeare

and Christopher Marlowe;

•seafaring prowess of English adventurers and pirates known as “Elizabethan Sea Dogs”

ENGLAND PLUNDERS THE WEALTH OF OTHER EUROPEAN NATIONS

English sea captains, Elizabethan Sea Dogs, explored and expanded the English empire

privateers (pirates) were licensed by the English government to attack treasure ships

Sir Walter Raleigh, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, Martin Frobisher, John Hawkins, George Anson, William Dampier, Thomas Cavendish and Sir Francis Drake -- the greatest of all

searched for the Northwest Passage, took part in the slave trade from Africa

and engaged in attacks on Spanish shipping in the Caribbean

their plunder added greatly to the treasury of Queen Elizabeth

FRANCIS DRAKE ENTERS THE SLAVE TRADE

Francis Drake undertook several expeditions to capture slaves sent to the Caribbean-- 1563

forcibly removed people from the coast of West Africa

were sold into slavery to Spanish plantations

although kidnapping and forced transportation of people was illegal under English law

Two sources usually supplied the victims of slavery:

•attacks on African towns and villages with the assistance of rival African warlords;

•attacks on Portuguese and Spanish slave ships whose cargo was people

Drake was a strict sea captain who was intolerant of stupidity

he was quick to punish but he was equally fast to recognize merit and industry

he possessed an appealing sense of humor and an equally hot temper

he was characterized as firm, fair and just

PORTUGAL EXPANDS ITS TRADE IN MACAU, CHINA

Portugal was granted special treaty rights by the Chinese to conduct trade -- 1564

Portuguese could conduct business within the restricted area of Macau, China

which was placed under Portuguese administration

however, China retained sovereignty

and Chinese residents were subject to Chinese law

Chinese built a wall across the small peninsula on which Macau was located

Portugal set up a trading factory and threw open the port of Macau to Western trade

European trade with China was again undertaken -- Chinese collected a port tax

Portuguese were allowed to go forty miles inland to Canton (today’s Guangzhou) to trade

but only twice a year

SPAIN COLONIZES THE ISLANDS OF THE PHILIPPINES

Spain established a colony in the archipelago -- 1565

trade with the Portuguese in Macau, China was soon begun

carrying goods to Acapulco, New Spain (Mexico)

Spain developed Manila-Acapulco trade route used by the galleon treasure fleet

composed of large, multi-decked sailing ships laden with spices, silver

and bee’s wax used in making candles

after leaving China the Manila-Acapulco trade route ran north until trade winds

and the Japanese current bore the ships west into North American waters

Spanish merchant men avoided the North American coast

and continued on to New Spain

Manila trade not easy -- no ship’s captain ever dreamed of sailing with a small crew

navigation had progressed very little beyond compass and astrolabe to determine latitude

being becalmed in the tropics was a reality -- as were the sweltering nights

ocean waters held man-eating sharks and, it was believed, ship-swallowing monsters

Beriberi, scurvy, shipwreck, savages, starvation and storms

often cut crews to 1/10th their original strength

fear of violent death and cannibalism by the natives were constant companions of sailors

Soon Macau, China was visited by Spanish traders and merchants from other nations

who sailed under false ownership paper and false Portuguese flags

islands of the Philippines, controlled by Spain, developed as a stop

on the Macau trade route

SPANISH INTEREST IN NORTH AMERICA CENTERS ON ITS OCEANS

First North American sources of wealth for the Spanish were the ocean waters

which provided walrus and whale

from a single whale as many as four hundred barrels of oil could be extracted

great demand for fish in Roman Catholic countries assured large profits

from the Newfoundland and Grand Banks fishing grounds

Because of the success of the Manila Trade

between Acapulco (Mexico) and the Philippines

Spain temporarily lost interest in the Northwest

rather she focused her attention on commercial interests in the East

and maintained her established trade route:

Manila, The Philippines to Acapulco, Mexico -- and return

FRANCIS DRAKE CONDUCTS RAIDS ON THE SPANISH MAIN

After participating in the slave trade for almost ten years

Francis Drake hit on another scheme

Drake sailed the Spanish Main on a ship owned and commanded by John Hawkins – 1572

he embarked on his first major raiding enterprise with a crew of seventy-three

traveling to the Atlantic mainland of North and Central America and the Caribbean

he planned an attack on the Isthmus of Panama -- part of the Spanish Main

silver and gold treasure of Peru had to be landed on the Pacific side of Panama

to be sent overland to the Caribbean Sea where Spanish galleons would receive it

for delivery to Spain

Francis Drake attacked a richly laden Spanish mule train -- 1573

capturing twenty tons of silver and gold -- most of it was buried because it was too heavy

his crew carried what they could eighteen miles over jungle-covered mountains

only to find their boats were gone with the Spanish were not far behind

Drake and his men built a raft which he sailed with two volunteers to his ship

he, his men and his treasure were saved

Spain developed the convoy system

where several war ships protected valuable treasure ships

Drake hit on the idea of sailing to the Pacific coast

where gold ships were still unprotected

ENGLISH CAPTIAN FROBISHER TAKES HIS FIRST VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA

Captain Martin Frobisher was an English privateer, navigator, explorer and naval officer

he began his career in northwestern Africa transporting slaves for several years

before he began looting French ships in the English Channel

Frobisher decided to search of the Northwest Passage to China

it took him five years to raise the necessary capital to fund the expedition

Frobisher managed to convince the Muscovy Company to underwrite his expedition

Supported by England’s Queen Elizabeth, Frobisher sailed three ships to the New World

*Gabriel* and *Michael,* about twenty-five tons each, and an unnamed ship of ten tons

(tonnage was a measure of volume and not weight)

they reached the Shetland Islands with a total crew of thirty-five -- June 7, 1576

his unnamed ship was lost in a storm and the *Michael* was abandoned

*Gabriel* sailed around Newfoundland

Frobisher sighted the east coast of the mainland of “Labrador”

Frobisher discovered the mouth of “Frobisher Bay”

but was blocked from sailing north by ice and wind

he decided to sail west to see if the passage connected with the Pacific Ocean

he reached “Baffin Island” before turning for England

carrying with him a black stone to see if it was gold-bearing

it was not but it did convince the Muscovy Company to fund another trip

MARTIN FROBISHER TAKES HIS SECOND VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA

Frobisher led a second much larger expedition back to northern North America

this effort was funded by the Muscovy Company and by Queen Elizabeth -- 1577

he was appointed high admiral of all lands and waters that may be discovered by him

the queen loaned him a 200-ton ship, the *Ayde*

Frobisher set out from Blackwall, England with 150 men including miners, refiners,

gentlemen (guests who did not work) and soldiers

they entered Frobisher Bay -- the high admiral solemnly took possession

in the name of the queen

Several weeks were spent in collecting ore -- very little was done in the way of discovery

there were some skirmishes with Native Americans as the members of the expedition

collected 200 tons of ore thought to be gold

which turned out to be Iron Pyrite (fool’s gold)

ENGLISH CAPTAIN FRANCIS DRAKE RAIDS THE SPANISH MAIN

Queen Elizabeth sent Francis Drake on an expedition against the Spanish -- 1577-[1578]

Drake sailed out of Plymouth, England at age thirty-six -- December 13, 1577

with five ships, one hundred-fifty men and fourteen boys

he was lavishly outfitted with the best materials and equipment

Drake did not tell the crew of their destination until they reached the coast of Africa

Drake’s expedition stopped at Morocco, in northwest Africa

and the Cape Verde Islands -- a Portuguese possession off the West coast of Africa

Drake soon sighted and captured a Portuguese ship

he kidnapped a pilot who was familiar with Brazil -- Drake’s destination

FRANCIS DRAKE SET SAIL FOR THE NEW WORLD

Drake led a brilliant clandestine series of raids along the east coast of South America

to capture and sink slow-moving, over-laden Spanish treasure ships

Land was sited north of Rio de la Plata (river) (in today’s Argentina) -- April 5, 1578

as the fleet headed south Drake had difficulty maintaining communications with his ships

He was unsuccessfully attacked by natives (at Port St. Julian, Argentina)

this attack, along with the hazards of the sea, lowered the morale of his men

After the battle, word of a mutiny led by Drake’s close friend Captain Thomas Doughty

leaked out and was told to Drake

Drake ordered a company of men ashore to try Captain Doughty for treason

court was convened under strict rules

in the custom of the day, Drake acted as chief judge

witnesses were heard and a verdict of guilty was delivered

some say Drake spent the afternoon closeted in his cabin with Doughty

they lunched, opened a bottle of wine and had a long chat

together they left the cabin arm in arm walking down the sand

Doughty bade his friend an affectionate farewell

then placed his head on a block of wood and was executed

Drake’s sense of justice outweighed his regard for his friend

Drake’s expedition remained at Port St. Julian for more than six weeks

making repairs, resting his men and planning -- two of his ships could not be saved

these were destroyed

Francis Drake set out with three ships for the Strait of Magellan -- August 17, 1578

reaching South America’s southern tip he fought raging tides and winds for three weeks

they faced a nightmare scene of plunging seas, interminable gales and easy shipwreck

one of his ships was wrecked by a storm

another ship was blown off course and returned to England

Drake entered the Pacific Ocean with his one remaining ship -- the *Pelican*

which he renamed the *Golden Hind* in honor of the coat of arms

of his close friend Sir Christopher Hatton which featured this female red deer

ENGLISHMAN MARTIN FROBISHER’S THIRD VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA

Undeterred by the lack of success during Frobisher’s first to efforts in North America

Queen Elizabeth sent out an even larger expedition with all of the necessities

to establish a colony of 100 men in northern North America

this expedition consisted of fifteen ships which left Plymouth, England -- 1578

bound for Frobisher Bay by way of Greenland

Stormy weather and dangerous ice caused Frobisher to enter a new body of water

he sailed about sixty miles into (Hudson Strait)

which leads to (what later became Hudson Bay)

before setting sail for Frobisher Bay

Some small attempts were made to found a colony

but dissension and discontent stopped the effort

tons of ore were mined to be shipped to England -- all Iron Pyrite

FRANCIS DRAKE SAILS THE SOUTH SEA (PACIFIC OCEAN)

Turning north Drake sailed up the Pacific along the coast of (today’s Chili)

pirating as he went -- 1578

he attacked Spanish ports, plundered towns and captured silver mule trains

as he journeyed, he sacked the port city (of Valparaiso in Chile)

where he also captured the *Grand Captain of the South* loaded with Chilean wine

unaware Spanish sailors had never seen a foreign sail in this port

after plundering the ship Drake cut the ship’s cables and masts

to prevent pursuit

nothing was too small to be of interest -- nothing was too large to prevent being attacked

Drake attacked the *Callao de Lima* but was disappointed by the lack of treasure

one ship held only 80£ of gold but it was stopped and pirated

no cargo was insignificant

when Spanish ships were captured Drake took their more accurate charts

he captured Portugal’s chief treasure ship, the *Glory of the South Seas* near Lima, Peru

she was loaded with Peruvian gold (worth $7 million today)

Drake learned another Spanish galleon, *Our Lady of the Conception,*

was sailing toward Manila in the Philippines

he gave chase and eventually captured his most valuable treasure

eighty pounds of gold, twenty-six tons of silver bars, a golden crucifix,

several boxes of pearls and jewels and thirteen chests full of precious metal coins

By the time he reached the West coast of New Spain (Mexico)

he had filled his ship with plunder

ENGLISH CAPTAIN FRANCIS DRAKE REACHES NORTHERN NEW SPAIN (MEXICO)

Somewhere north of Spain’s northern-most claim at Point Loma

Drake found a good port and landed -- June 17, 1579

in need of maintenance he took five weeks for repairs and to restock his vessel

Francis Drake took formal possession of the land for England’s Queen Elizabeth

he gave the region the name Nova Albion (Latin for “New Britain”)

because he was reminded of home

FRANCIS DRAKE WAS THE FIRST TO SAIL NORTH OF CALIFORNIA

After five weeks in port Drake sailed the *Golden Hind* north

four factors possibly determined his route back to England:

•to go back the direction he came was foolhardy

Spanish men-of-war and armed merchant ships waited for his return;

•this was the worst time of year to sail around Cape Horn

(southern tip of South America);

•he learned of the expected arrival of the annual Spanish galleon from the Philippines

Drake sailed north looking for the Manila treasure ship, but it eluded him

•if he could find the Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

he could sail directly back to England

Drake’s log of his journey is not a very accurate -- he was escaping not exploring

many historians believe he turned directly West (from today’s San Francisco region)

other historians believe Drake kept sailing North in uncharted waters

Drake recorded that he reached 42º North (near the present California-Oregon border)

but was turned back by cold weather -- July 23, 1579

however, it seems Drake may have reached 48º North

(the Washington-British Columbia boarder)

Drake’s description of the land fits either Oregon or Washington

**“...the rain which fell was an unnatural substance....”**

two days later: **“...there followed most vile, thicke, and stinking fogges.”**

Drake himself was more than a little prone to exaggeration

so too was Chaplain Francis Fletcher who was the actual keeper of the ship’s log

Drake referred to him as **“ye falsest knave that liveth”[[48]](#footnote-48)**

FRANCIS DRAKE DECIDED TO RETURN TO ENGLAND

Drake and his crew were in no condition to return through the Straits of Magellan

*Golden Hind* carried far too much cargo

and there were too many crew members who were wounded from battles

and battered by storms

At some point Drake turned westward across the Pacific Ocean

away from waiting Spanish war ships

he reached (today’s Indonesia) and stopped at the Spice Islands

he reached the Philippines sixty-eight days after leaving the coast of North America

he sailed for England by way of the Cape of Good Hope, up the west coast of Africa

and continued right under the nose of the unsuspecting Spanish navy

Francis Drake sailed the *Golden Hind* into Plymouth, England -- September 26, 1580

with fifty-nine of his original 164 men remaining

he brought with him ten tons of silver and 101 pounds of gold and a rich cargo of spices

Queen’s half-share of cargo surpassed the rest of the crown’s income for that year

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE IS KNIGHTED BY QUEEN ELIZABETH

Francis Drake believed he may have found the western entrance to the Northwest Passage

a fabled short-cut from Europe to the Pacific Ocean

he was first Englishman to sail around the world -- sixty years after Magellan’s crew

but to the Spanish he was a pirate -- he weakened Spanish control of the New World

Drake was knighted aboard the *Golden Hind* by Queen Elizabeth -- April 4, 1581

however, the queen demanded Drake’s route be kept secret

England was just beginning to emerge as a naval power

and was experiencing fierce competition with Spain

Elizabeth did not want any information to reach the Spanish

if he had discovered what he thought might be the Northwest Passage

it would be vital to keep the information secret from the Spanish

Sir Francis Drake and his crew were sworn to secrecy -- his journals and maps were seized

these became known as “The Queen’s Maps”and were available to only a very few

But Sir Francis Drake may have been frustrated by Queen Elizabeth’s policy of secrecy

he may have leaked bits of information to early cartographers (map makers)

who were anxious for information on the geography of the Western Hemisphere

purported copies of Drake’s maps were published 1582, 1586, [1589] and [1596]

at least two maps based on Drake’s activities show details of Western North America

“Dutch Drake Map” [1586] shows what may well be the outline

of the British Columbia coast and what may be (today’s Prince of Wales Island,

Queen Charlotte Island, Vancouver Island and the Olympic Peninsula)

Cartographer Jodocus Hondius drew a world map edited by Sir Francis Drake [1589]

Drake’s “Port New Albion” appears in a sketch

Shakespeare, Drake’s contemporary, made reference to New Albion

(Drake’s logs, paintings and charts were destroyed when Whitehall Palace burned [1698])

ANGLO-SPANISH WAR PITS PROTESTANT ENGLAND AGAINST CATHOLIC SPAIN

England and Spain were rivals since Queen Elizabeth created the Church of England [1558]

Spain’s Catholic King Philip II (the former king of England) believed that England

was actually a Catholic nation that was dominated by a Protestant Queen

English privateers (pirates to the Spanish) were licensed by the English government

to attack treasure ships sailing the Spanish Main

selling African slaves in Caribbean Spanish colonies was considered smuggling in Spain

English privateers increased their wealth and the Royal treasury with the slave trade

In retaliation for the execution of England’s Catholic Queen Mary -- 1587

King Philip II vowed to invade England to place a Catholic monarch on its throne again

Spanish navy developed a huge armada (fleet) of vessels

132 Spanish war ships carrying 18,000 sailors and 8,000 soldiers

along with 3,165 cannons

Sir Francis Drake led a preemptive raid on two of Spain’s main ports: Cadiz and Corunna

Drake sailed the coast of Spain intercepting and destroying

thirty-seven Spanish naval and merchant ships

he estimated he captured between 1,600 and 1,700 barrel staves

enough to make 25,000 to 30,000 barrels to carry water and provisions

for the Spanish Armada

provisions and water had to be stored in barrels made of green (uncured) wood

this attack delayed Spain’s planned invasion by a year

SPANISH ARMADA BEGINS ITS INVASION OF ENGLAND

Spain’s Armada sailed up the English Channel as darkness approached -- July 21, 1588

Sir Francis Drake captured the Spanish galleon *Rosario* which was leading the fleet

this ship’s lantern was being followed by the armada

when it was distinguished by the attacking English, Spain’s fleet fell into disarray

Drake organized fire-ships (burning vessels that floated downriver toward the Spanish)

most of the Spanish captains broke formation

and sailed into the open sea -- July 21-22, 1588

Spain’s invasion of England was unsuccessful and the armada sailed back to Spain

England was placed in a position to become “Queen of the Seas”

(she ruled the oceans for the next 200 years

free to explore the South Seas looking for an Unknown Continent to develop

free to establish trade with India along the old Portuguese trade route)

SPANISH TRADE IN THE NEW WORLD DECLINES

Spain had long taken advantage of the easy fortune to be made in the New World

by exploiting the inhabitants and the natural resources located there

But the defeat of the Spanish Armada began the decline of Spain’s power in the New World

Spain’s loss gave opportunity for England, France and Holland

to participate in the colonization of the Americas as competitors of Spain

Facing challenges to North America’s Eastern seaboard from England, France and Holland

Spain was gradually forced to settle for the less exciting but more stable business of trade

primarily between New Spain (Mexico) and the Philippines

no longer did the Strait of Anian seem an important goal

England, however, would benefit greatly from a Northwest Passage to Asia

if it could be found

MAPS BECOME INCREASINGLY ACCURATE

One hundred years after the [1492] voyage of Christopher Columbus

sailors were becoming very skillful in their craft

Huge blanks in the world’s maps were being filled with great accuracy

Venice, Italy was still the meeting place for sailors from all over Europe

except for Spain and Portugal, most of world’s trade was along Mediterranean Sea

and was controlled by Italians and Arabs

JUAN DE FUCS DISCOVERS AN OPENING ON THE NORTH AMERICAN COAST

Apostolos Valerianos was a Greek navigator born on the Greek Island of Cephalonia

he said he sailed as a pilot for Spain for forty years under the name Juan de Fuca

he served in the West Indies snd in the trade between the Philippines and New Spain

Juan de Fuca claimed to discover a great strait just North of 47º -- 1592

he claimed to have sailed East through the strait for twenty days

discovering many islands and an inland sea

he noted people wore skins and were rich in gold, silver and pearls

for his effort he received neither reward nor commendation

from the Viceroy of New Spain (Mexico)

Juan de Fuca was in Venice, Italy where he met English trader Michael Lok -- 1596

Juan de Fuca told the story of how [in 1592] he was sent by New Spain’s Viceroy

to find the western entrance of the passage to the Atlantic Ocean

he sailed northward with two ships to about the southern tip of (Vancouver Island)

he reported sailing around a high pillar of rock (Cape Flattery)

he entered an inlet: **“There finding that the land tended north and northeast, with a broad inlet of sea… he entered thereinto, sayling therein more than twentie dayes, and found that land trending still sometimes northwest and northeast and north, and also east and southeastward, and very much broader sea than was at the said entrance** (Strait of Georgia)**, and that he passed by divers ilands in the sayling. And that at the entrance of this said Strait there is on the northwest coast thereof a great hedland or iland with an exceeding high pinacle or spired rocke, like a piller thereupon.”[[49]](#footnote-49)**

Juan de Fuca left the impression he discovered the Strait of Anian (“Northwest Passage”)

DRAKE DIED WITHOUT EXPLAINING THE EXTENT OF HIS EXPLORATION

Knowledge of the full extent of Sir Francis Drake’s expeditions

appears to have died with him -- 1596

second hand accounts of his exploits vary greatly

copies of his maps were purposefully distorted to confuse the Spanish

Many bits of information that he provided make no sense in the light of history:

•on the voyage north, Drake was turned back by cold weather

in summer this would describe conditions in Southeast Alaska and not California;

•accounts of the “Port New Albion” describe Indians

living in “earth lodges” located partly underground

these houses were used by Salish Indians of the Northwest -- not California Indians

•Drake’s crew described a small animal with “the taile of a rat”

which provided furs and food for the local Indians

this could very well be the muskrat which lives in the Northwest and not California

Bits of evidence suggest European contact with the Pacific Northwest coast was made

before the well-documented arrival of English Captain James Cook [1776-1780]:

• Nootka Indians on Vancouver Island said that English Captain James Cook

was not the first white man in Nootka Indian territory;

•an English coin dated about [1560] was found

sixty miles from (Whale Cove, Oregon);

•an English sword with a brass hilt was found in an Indian grave (but was later lost);

•scraps of metal were found at the Ozette dig on the Washington coast [1969-1970]

a seventeen-page unsigned narrative known as the “Anonymous Narrative”

has Drake sailing to 48º North

(just south of today’s Cape Flattery and the Strait of Juan de Fuca)

there is speculation the original latitude was 53º North

and the number was changed to maintain secrecy

INTERNATIONAL LAW ESTABLISHES CLAIMS FOR NEW DISCOVERIES

According to the international laws of the time there were three possible claims to new land:

•First was the claim of “Discovery”

this required a record of the approximate location and immediate environment

of the discovery

a formal act of taking possession in the name of the king must be undertaken;

•Second was the claim of “Exploration”

this required greater detail regarding the immediate surroundings be recorded

including extract resources that were available;

•Third was the claim of “Settlement”

this required establishment of a colony and development of the resources

personnel to protect the claim were to permanently located at the site

with each succeeding claim enforcement became easier to accomplish

FRENCH BECOME INVOLVED IN THE CANADIAN TRADE

French fishermen and their families settled the islands of Saint-Pierre and Miquelon

off the coast of Newfoundland, Acadia (as it was known by the French)

When fishing fleets returned to Europe from “l’Acadie”(Canada)[[50]](#footnote-50)

they also carried beaver pelts

Enterprising French merchants saw the possibility of becoming wealthy by developing trade

white men wanted what Native Americans had in abundance and did not value

independent French merchants traded for beaver pelts

with Indians of the Acadia interior

these French traders secured monopolies in the fur trade from King Henry IV

so long as no rival was available to bid the price up,

the beaver trade was a simple matter

FRENCH FUR TRADE DEVELOPS IN L’ACADIE (CANADA)

While Spain relentlessly exploited Native Americans for their gold and silver

France grew interested in the lucrative fur trade and lucrative fishing off the Grand Banks

French King Henry IV appointed Troilus de Mesgouez, marquis de la Roche

to be Lieutenant General of “l’Acadie”(Canada)

de la Roche was granted a monopoly in the fur trade

and settlements in Canada, Newfoundland, and all adjacent lands -- January 12, 1598

Marquis de la Roche selected some forty vagrants and beggars

escaping prison terms or death to make the voyage to “l’Acadie”

accompanied by about ten soldiers

de la Roche’s expedition set out on two ships bound for “Sable Island”

off the coast of Nova Scotia

Marquis de la Roche settled his party on the north coast

where he built living quarters and a storehouse

there he placed provisions, clothes, tools, arms and furniture

Leaving the post under the orders of a commandant, Querbonyer,

la Roche accompanied the ships to the Newfoundland fisheries

according to a previous agreement

profits from the fishing were to go to the ships’ captains

but the furs exchanged were to be divided, two-thirds being given to the captains

and the remainder to the Marquis de la Roche

As la Ronche set out on his return trip to France -- beginning of September 1598

violent storms prevented the ships from stopping at the island post

he sailed directly to the French coast

(Each spring la Ronche supplied his outpost

deportees got their food from the fish and game available locally

they also cultivated gardens which supplied them with vegetables)

FRENCH INTEREST IN ACADIA (CANADA) INTENSIFIES

Huguenot (French Protestant) ship owner Pierre de Chauvin de Tonnetuit

de Tonnetuit had developed an interest in commercial and maritime enterprises

he was regularly engaged in the fur trade and cod-fishery

of “l’Acadie”(Canada) and Newfoundland

He obtained a ten-year fur trade monopoly in New France from King Henry IV

similar to Lieutenant General Marquis de la Roche -- November 22, 1599

while only **“one of the lieutenants”[[51]](#footnote-51)** of the Lieutenant General of l’Acadie

de Tonnetuit received fishing rights from the Gulf of St. Lawrence

to the Saguenay River

Pierre de Chauvin de Tonnetuit began preparations

for a voyage to colonize l’Acadie

# 1600-1699

DE TONNETUIT LEADS A FOUR-SHIP EXPEDITION TO L’ACADIE (CANADA)

With a grant from French King Henry IV to establish a fur-trade monopoly

in l’Acadie (Canada) Pierre de Chauvin de Tonnetuit set out with four ships

and sixteen colonists from Honfluer, France -- early spring of 1600

St. Malo merchant Francois Grave Pontgrave was employed as de Tonnetuit’s partner

he was a French navigator and early fur trader and explorer in the New World

St. Malo, France merchant and French naval and military captain Pierre Du Gua de Monts

was the son of a wealthy St. Malo merchant family

he also was a French Huguenot (protestant)

de Monts traveled northeastern North America as a passenger with de Tonnetuit

FRENCH ATTEMPT A SETTLEMENT IN NORTH AMERICA

Francois Grave Pontgrave led the effort to build a colony

only because he had been to northern North America several times and knew the natives

Pontgrave convinced the local Indians to trap beavers to be traded with the French

(in the area around today’s Hudson Bay)

Expedition leader Pierre Chauvin de Tonnetuit against the advice of Pontgrave

chose to build a trading post, *Tadoussac*, strategically situated at the junction

of the Saguenay and St. Lawrence rivers with a harbor adjacent

this route to the interior had long been a trading place for the Montagnais natives

who were the enemies of the Iroquois Indian nation

About 1,000 Algonkin, Etchiman and Montagnais natives descend on Tadoussac

each year to trade

Montagnais Indians had been trading with the Europeans for over fifty years

Iroquois Indians harassed the Montagnais over the years

Frenchmen chose to arm the Montagnais against the Iroquois

creating an enemy for the French that would cost them their North American empire

Native Americans were classified as “savages” by the Europeans

on the surface this meant an uncultivated, untamed, barbarous, crude, cruel person

who is without civilization

its hidden meaning was that a savage was less than human

and therefore had few, if any, inherent rights

Chauven and Pontgrave returned to France with a cargo of furs -- autumn 1600

leaving sixteen men at Tadoussac

eleven died that winter and the rest went to live with the Native Americans

PACIFIC NORTHWESTS OZETTE INDIAN VILLAGE IS BURIED IN A MUD SLIDE

Makah Indian village of Ozette was located just South of Cape Flattery

on the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca

it was buried by a massive mud slide -- about 1600

(When excavated in the [1970s] a European bead and some brass tacks

were among the items found

it is possible these European items came from Sir Francis Drake’s ship

other possibilities seem even more remote

EAST INDIA COMPANY COMES INTO EXISTENCE

“Governor and Company of Merchants of London trading into the East Indies”

East India Company, as it was called, was led by George Clifford, Earl of Cumberland

with 215 partners

**t**his was the first company to issue stock

shares of the company were owned by wealthy merchants and aristocrats

Knights, Burgesses (members of Parliament) and London Aldermen (city leaders)

East India Company was chartered by English Queen Elizabeth -- December 31, 1600

this company had a monopoly on trade with all countries

east of the Cape of Good Hope and west of the Straits of Magellan

anyone trading beyond the Atlantic Ocean in either India or China had to secure a license

from the East Indian Company at a cost between £5,000 and £25,000

East India Company traded mainly in cotton, silk, indigo dye, salt, tea and opium

English government owned no shares and had only indirect control over the company

the company possessed quasi-governmental powers, including

the ability to wage war, imprison and execute convicts, negotiate treaties

and establish colonies

(East India Company eventually came to rule large areas of India

with its own private armies

there it exercised military power and assumed administrative functions for the nation)

FRENCH SUPPLY SHIP FINDS THE COLONY TADOUSSAC IS FAILING

Pierre Chauvin de Tonnetuit sent a supply ship to his colony of Tadoussac

when the ship arrived five of the sixteen colonists were found alive -- 1601

Tadoussac was poorly suited for settlement because of the rugged terrain and poor soil

(after three summers, de Tonnetuit failed to establish a colony)

CANADA AND ACADIA COMPANY IS FORMED BY FRANCE

French merchants had been excluded from the trade monopolies

given to Troilus de Mesgouez, marquis de la Roche and Pierre de Chauvin de Tonnetuit

these merchants put a great deal of pressure King Henry IV

therefore the monopolies were expanded to include other traders -- 1602

Admiral Aymar de Clermont de Chaste was appointed Vice-Admiral of France

by French King Henry IV

Admiral de Chaste was commissioned to colonize New France

and was granted a fur trade monopoly when he agreed to command a four-ship expedition

of sixteen colonists to the Saint Lawrence River -- February 6, 1602

he, like de la Roche and Tonnetuit, would preside over l’Acadie (Canada)

as lieutenant general

de Chaste created the Canada and Acadia Company to conduct trade -- February 6, 1602

Aymar de Clermont de Chaste led the Canada and Acadia Company expedition to l’Acadie

where he served as one of as one of the governor generals

(there he died shortly before this expedition returned to France [1603])

DUTCH EAST INDIA COMPANY IS FOUNDED

Competition among independent trading companies in the Spice Islands

drove the price of spices in (today’s Indonesia while driving down the profits in Europe

this led to the creation of Dutch East India Company -- March 20, 1602

which was granted a twenty-one-year monopoly to carry out trade in the Spice Islands

in competition with the English East India Company

Dutch East India Company’s charter

empowered the building of forts and maintenance of armies

treaties were concluded with Asian rulers by the company

(Dutch East India Company is often considered to be the first

multinational corporation in the world)

SPAIN NEEDS A PORT ON THE WEST COAST OF NORTH AMERICA

Spain’s Manila Trade between Acapulco (Mexico) and the Philippines

connected Asia and the Spice Islands with North America

little space was allotted on the treasure ships for provisions

Manila Trade required Spain to find a safe port on the West coast of North America

they needed to restock provisions for the galleons

for the last leg of the eastward journey to Acapulco

Viceroy of New Spain wanted to avoid English activities in North America

he sent Sebastian Vizcaino and Martin Aguilar

to explore the west coast of North America

this was first effort to do so by the Spanish

since the Cabrillo- Ferrelo expedition [1542]

SPANISH EXPLORERS SEBASTIAN VIZCAINO AND MARTIN AGUILAR SAIL NORTH

Sebastian Vizcaino sailed out of Acapulco, Mexico with three ships -- May 5, 1602

he followed the course taken some sixty years earlier by Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo

and his pilot Bartolome Ferrelo

Vizcaino, who headed an expedition to the north, was an able Spanish officer and sailor

he sailed on the *San Diego* accompanied by Ensign Martin de Aguilar on the *Tres Reyes*

and Toribio Gomez de Corban on the *San Tomas*

this was the best equipped squadron sent off the Pacific coast thus far

FRENCH COLONY ON SABLE ISLAND STRUGGLES TO EXIST

For some unknown reason Troilus de Mesgouez, marquis de la Roche

did not dispatch the annual supply ship to his settlement on Sable Island -- 1602

Complaints from the vagabonds and beggars living on Sable Island reached the French Court

Aymar de Clermont de Chaste as lieutenant general of l’Acadie (Canada) was instructed

to take a commissioner to the settlement to make it into a reliable and suitable colony

SPAIN EXPLORES THE COAST OF CALIFORNIA

Both Vizcaino and de Aguilar spent a year 1602-1603

attempting to accomplish their mission of finding a safe harbor

along the coast of North America

they carefully explored the California coast

they rediscovered and mapped the harbors of Monterey Bay and San Diego Bay

Vizcaino planned to establish a colony at Monterey Bay

to this end he conducted surveys for two forts

Vizcaino named most of the prominent features such as Point Lobos, Carmel Valley,

Santa Catalina Island, Monterey Bay, Sierra Point and Coyote Point

thus removing many of the names

given by Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo- Bartolome Ferrelo expedition [1542-1543]

FRENCH COLONY ON SABLE ISLAND COMES TO AN END

Troilus de Mesgouez, marquis de la Roche’s vagabonds and beggars colonizing Sable Island

revolted probably as a result of the lack of food supplies and exasperation

by their long detention in a wilderness -- winter 1602-1603

two settlement leaders were butchered followed by further murders among the colonists

When a ship arrived from France, eleven principal rebels

together with the remaining stock of fur were returned to France

where King Henry IV presented each a cash gift for their animal skins

Marquis de la Roche was indignant that these men were not hanged

for the murders they admitted but rather received a cash award from the king

MARTIN DE AGUILAR BECOMES SEPERATED FROM SEBASTIAN VIZCAINO

Martin de Aguilar became separated from Vizcaino in a storm

Vizcaino’s plan to build fortifications at Monterey Bay was dropped

De Aguilar was forced by the storm as far as 43º North latitude

along the coast of (Oregon) -- 1603

returning South Aguilar explored the region between Cape Blanco and the Rogue River he continued south along the coast of California and came abreast of a **“rapid and abundant river, with ash trees, willows, and brambles, and other trees of Castile upon its banks.”[[52]](#footnote-52)**

de Aguilar attempted to enter the river, but because of the strength of current could not

he named the “Rio”(River) “Santa Ynes”

which he believed to by the fabled Strait of Anian because of its strong current

and its East-West direction

with a great number of the crew sick, Martin de Aguilar returned to Acapulco, Mexico

After his report of a great river was given in Acapulco -- 1603

navigators of all nations accepted the existence of the “great river of the West”

MICHAEL LOK CARRIES JUAN DE FUCA’S STORY TO ENGLAND

English trader Michael Lok was excited about the prospect of a “Northwest Passage”

located directly West of England -- if Juan de Fuca’s [1596] story was to be believed

Lok traveled to England and published the story

in an effort to arouse the interest of the English government -- 1603

Lok eventually told the story to England’s King James I who was not interested

he was occupied at the time attempting to establish colonies

on the East coast of North America

advisors to the King saw two problems with Juan de Fuca’s story:

•why was he not royally rewarded for his fabulous find;

•why was there no mention of a Juan de Fuca in Spanish naval records

WEST COAST OF NORTH AMERICA IS IGNORED BY EUROPE

European nations were involved in trading activities for almost the next one hundred years

Spain, the most powerful country at that time, was occupied with settling and plundering

Florida, Central and South America and maintaining her trade with the Philippines

England was actively establishing colonies on east coast of North America

and attempting to establish the fur trade in northern North America

and cod fishing along Newfoundland’s Grand Banks

France was busy establishing an empire in North America

centered on the fur trade and fishing

(Russia was the first country to demonstrate an interest

in the Pacific coast of North America)

FRENCH EXPLORER SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN EXPLORES THE NEW WORLD

Samuel de Champlain was employed as a geographer

by Governor General Admiral Aymar de Clermont de Chaste

who had been given a fur trading patent in North America by French King Henry IV

Champlain sailed from Honfleur, France -- March 15, 1603

on the first of eleven voyages to the East coast of the New World

Champlain was accompanied by St. Malo merchant Francois Grave Pontgrave

they successfully explored the St. Lawrence River as far as La Chine Rapids -- 1603

Champlain reached Tadoussac, a trading station for fish and furs on the St. Lawrence River

before returning to France to give his report

ADDITIONAL COPIES OF SIR FRANCIS DRAKE’S MAPS SURFACE

These maps have interesting details:

•Molyneux Globe was produced -- 1603

it contained remarkable proof of Drake’s secret voyage:

it appeared to show the straits separating (Vancouver Island) from the mainland

•what is known as “Francis Drake Map” by Nicola van Sype

was engraved in the [17th Century]

it appeared to rely on information provided by Drake and showed a chain of islands

along the coast (between today’s San Francisco and Oregon)

where no islands exist -- these may in fact be the island chain

north of (Cape Flattery in the state of Washington and Canada)

•another map in the (mid-17th century) may show landmarks along the coast:

(Cape Flattery, Grays Harbor, the Columbia River and Vancouver Island)

•Spanish map attributed to one of Drake’s crew

may be the first to depict California as an island

southern tip of the island is the Mexican Baja Peninsula

northern end looks like the (Olympic Peninsula of Washington)

Some historians believe Drake did not stop his northward journey at California[[53]](#footnote-53)

but rather continued on to the Pacific Northwest

“Port New Albion” might have been far north of Drake’s Bay (San Francisco) it has been speculated by amateur historians that Francis Drake sailed as far north

as the Stikine River (Drake’s “River of the Straits”) in Southeast Alaska

then south to (the Georgia Strait and Puget Sound)

three locations seem to fit drawings and notations made by Drake

(Drakes Bay [San Francisco], Nehalem Bay [south of Cannon Beach, Oregon]

and Whale Cove [near Depot Bay, Oregon] -- the best match to the drawings)

nonetheless, New Albion appeared on maps for centuries off the California coast

PIERRE DU GUA DE MONTS RECEIVES EXCLUSIVE RIGHT TO COLONIZE L’ACADIE

With the death of Lieutenant General Aymar de Clermont de Chaste -- 1603

Pierre Du Gua de Monts formed a joint stock company and began selling shares

to the merchants of Rouen, Saint Malo, La Rochelle and Saint Jean De Luz

all major ports of France

De Monts secured a trade monopoly Newfoundland for ten years from French King Henry IV

which gave him control of fur the market from the St. Lawrence

in return de Monts promised settle 100 new colonists, including convicts, in the region

each year

Pierre Du Gua de Monts’ official title was Lieutenant General of l’Acadie (Canada)

as such he would be in charge of establishing and enforcing the laws of the French Court.

however, the French government had no control over the natives

who government themselves

French could control only the trade conducted at the French trading posts

native people traded whenever, and with whomever they chose

De Monts posted notices in all the ports in France forbidding anyone to trade in l’Acadie

in his capacity as an officer of the court, he would be able to punish any offenders

but enforcement of these restrictions could take place only in France

PIERRE DU GUA DE MONTS BEGIN TRADING IN L’ACADIE (CANADA)

Pierre Du Gua de Monts outfitted two ships to sail from France to l’Acadie -- 1603

he called on his old friend Francois Grave Pontgrave to command one ship

ship carpenter with little navigation experience Sieur De Champdore captained the other

Another nobleman, Jean De Biencourt, Baron de Poutrincourt, who had invested heavily

joined the expedition probably to see firsthand where his money was going

Poutrincourt was a military leader -- he was put in charge of securing and training

a small army for the security of the prospective trading post

EXPLORER SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN’S ESTABLISHED A COLONY AT ST. CROIX

On his second trip to l’Acadie (Canada) for France

Champlain sailed under lieutenant general for Acadia Pierre Du Gua de Monts’s authority

this was an expedition of seventy-four settlers to establish a colony

in (today’s Canada) -- early June, 1604-[1606]

St. Lawrence River (Quebec) was rejected as a possible French colony site

because of the great number of free traders who refused to yield to a French monopoly

these traders were already well established along the St. Lawrence River

they were independent trappers and traders

known as “coureurs des bois” (runners of the woods) by the French

or “bush-lopers” as they would be called by the English

they adopted native habits and lived with the Indians so long

that they became indistinguishable from the natives

skilled canoe paddlers known as “voyageurs” were hired to paddle huge canoes

wherever their employers wished to go

Champlain established a colony at the mouth of the St. Croix River

on Saint Croix Island -- June 1604

“St. Croix Island” outpost was one of the first attempts by France

at year-round colonization in l’Acadie

earlier attempts by Jaques Cartier at Charlesbourg-Royal [1541]

Tadoussac [1600] and Sable Island [1598] had all failed

French missionaries, both Catholic and Huguenots, flooded the New World

King of France paid young women to move to the colonies to marry male colonists there

this became the first successful settlement in l’Acadie (Canada)

people with dreams of a new life became colonists and merchants

others with a thirst for adventure became explorers, coureurs des bois and voyageurs

FRENCH COLONY ON ST. CROIX ISLAND IS MOVED

During the winter more than half the settlers left on St. Croix Island by Champlain

had perished due to a “land-sickness”(perhaps scurvy)

In the meantime, Champlain had discovered a new location better suited for a settlement

French Lieutenant General for Acadia Pierre Du Gua de Monts

and Samuel de Champlain moved their settlement to a new location

on the southern shore of the Bay of Fundy

it became known as the Habitation at Port-Royal-- spring 1605

(now Annapolis Royal, Nova Scotia)

Habitation at Port-Royalwas France’s first permanent settlement in North America

it served as the capital of l’Acadie

until it was destroyed by British military forces in [1613]

KING JAMES CHARTERS THE VIRGINIA COMPANY OF LONDON

Virginia Company of London (sometimes London Company) was a joint stock company

created by England’s King James to establish settlements on North America

(in today’s Massachusetts)

Virginia Company sent a three-ship expedition: *Susan Constant, Godspeed* and *Discovery*

led by English privateer Captain Christopher Newport with thirty-nine crewmen

l05 men and boys left Blackwall, England -- December 1606

there were no women on the first ships

ENGLISH MERCHANTS HIRE HENRY HUDSON TO FIND THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE

English merchants were competing with the Dutch East India Company

England’s Muscovy Company hired Henry Hudson to sail across the Arctic Circle to China

it was hoped the summer sun would melt the polar ice and present a safe passage

Hudson sailed the eighty-ton *Hopewell* with a crew of ten men

and a ship’s boy, his son John -- May 1, 1607

(*Hopewell* reached the vicinity of 80° north before encountering pack ice [July 1607]

he was forced to sail south and return to England)

ENGLISH ESTABLISH THEIR FIRST SUCCESSFUL COLONY ON NORTH AMERICA

After an unusually lengthy trip sailing across the Atlantic Ocean from England

colonists arrived on the James River at the southern edge of the mouth

(of today’s Chesapeake Bay) -- May 14, 1607

Virginia Company established the Jamestown Settlement

Jamestown Island in the James River about forty miles inland from Chesapeake Bay

was selected for the colony of Jamestown(named after England’s King James)

Virginia Company had advised them to find a location with deep water anchorage

that could be easily defended from European nations also establishing colonies

Colonists came ashore the next day and work began on the settlement

they quickly set about constructing their initial fort

within a month James Fort covered an acre on Jamestown Island

(although it burned down the following year)

wooden palisade walls formed a triangle around a storehouse, church and houses

Initially, the colony was governed by a council of seven -- one member served as president

serious problems soon emerged in the small English outpost

Algonquian-speaking Indians led by Chief Powhatan

conducted some trade with the new arrivals -- but relations were strained

many of the original colonists were upper-class Englishmen

not familiar with manual labor

Jamestown lacked sufficient laborers and skilled farmers

unfamiliar climate, as well as brackish (salty) water and lack of food

led to disease and death

HUDSON MAKES A SECOND ATTEMPT TO FIND THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE

Henry Hudson again sought the fabled Northwest Passage to China

again employed by England’s Muscovy Company this time he sailed north to Russia

aboard the *Hopewell* with fourteen men and his son John -- April 22, 1608

Hudson traveled almost 2,500 miles-- well above the Arctic Circle (July 1608)

but even in summer the ice was impenetrable

Hudson decided to sail to North America in search of the Northwest Passage to China

after weeks of rain the was near mutiny so Hudson returned to England

Muscovy Company officers were not pleased

EXPLORER SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN MAKES HIS THIRD VOYAGE TO L’ACADIE

Frenchman Pierre de Guast, Sieur de Monts dispatched Samuel de Champlain

and Francois du Pontgrave to l’Acadie (Canada)

Champlain made his third voyage to the New World – (April 13, 1608)- [1609]

this time in search of a location for a French trading post

and to serve as the beginning point in the search for the elusive route to China

Champlain, acting as lieutenant for Pierre de Guast, Sieur de Monts, began construction

on a wooden French trading fort (still in existence) that was protected by towering cliffs

overlooking where the St. Lawrence River narrows -- July 3, 1608

Twenty-eight people moved into “l’Habitation” (later Quebec City) -- July 8

(twenty of the twenty-eight colonists died the first winter)

Champlain established friendly relations with natives living in the area:

•Algonquin Indians of the lower St. Lawrence River region

•Hurons and Algonquins of the Ottawa River area

LIEUTENANT GENERAL FOR L’ ACADIE LOSES HIS FUR TRADE MONOLOPY

French Lieutenant General for Acadia Pierre Du Gua de Monts’ monopoly

was not renewed -- end of 1608

partly because of the lack of success in establishing a series of colonies

Fur trade was now thrown open to everyone

nevertheless, de Monts and his partners decided to continue their trading operations

faced with the loss French financial support,

de Monts temporarily turned to the English for support

de Monts’ operation in l’Acadie (Canada) were divided:

•Samuel de Champlain continued to explore and have charge of Quebec City;

•Francois Grave Pontgrave took charge of the fur trade

(Samuel de Champlain ended his third expedition by exploring up (today’s Richelieu River)

and discovering Lake Champlain [July 30, 1609])

HENRY HUDSON’S THIRD VOYAGE TO FIND THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE

English merchants of the Muscovy Company were unhappy with Henry Hudson

so he turned to the Dutch for financial support

Dutch East India Company commissioned him to find a water passage to Asia

as he made preparations for a third voyage, he received a package

from his friend and famous Jamestown Settler, Captain John Smith

stating the belief that a passage to the West lay to the North through America

He departed from Amsterdam, Netherlands on the eighty-ton *Half Moon* -- April 4, 1609

Dutch East India Company provided the ship and a crew of eighteen

most were Dutch but a few were Englishmen

he was again blocked by pack ice near Russia

Ignoring his order from the Dutch East India Company he turned toward North America

to attempt to find the fabled Northwest Passage to China

Hudson crossed the Atlantic Ocean

he reached the Grand Banks south of Newfoundland where they encountered Indians

*Half Moon* stayed for ten days in the area to repair a broken mast and fish for food

twelve of the ship’s crew carrying muskets and a small cannon

went ashore and assaulted the village near their anchorage

Indians were driven from their settlement -- their boats and possessions taken

*Half Moon* turned south along the Atlantic coast of North America

Hudson named “New Holland (Cape Cod) and discovered (Delaware Bay)

failing to enter Chesapeake Bay because of high wind

they reached the vicinity of Jamestown before returning north

Sailing north Hudson entered a river (Hudson River) he hoped would take him to China

he entered and noticed that the lush lands that lined the river contained abundant wildlife

he and his crew also met with some of the Native Americans living on the river bank

Hudson reached upriver as far as (today’s Albany, New York)

before leaving North America

Hudson sailed the *Half Moon* back to Europe docking in Dartmouth, England

England, who had poor relations with Holland seized his ship

as were the English members of his crew

after his release Hudson was forbidden from working with the Dutch again

Hudson’s explorations provided the foundation for Dutch claims to the Eastern seaboard

HENRY HUDSON’S FINAL VOYAGE

Henry Hudson managed to get backing for another voyage,

this time from the Virginia Company and the English East India Company

Hudson set out on his fourth journey from England -- April 17, 1610

aboard the fifty-five-ton *Discovery*

with twenty-three men and two ship’s boys including his son John

weather was foul and the seas icy as the Discovery made its way through an icy passage

(known today as Hudson Strait)

he sighted a huge body of water that he mistakenly assumed was the Pacific Ocean

(later it would be named Hudson Bay)

Hudson spent the following months mapping and exploring its eastern shores

but he and his crew did not find a passage to Asia

While exploring the gigantic bay the water became very icy

*Discovery* was frozen in ice -- November 1610

with dwindling food supplies, Hudson’s crew grew increasingly angry, ill and fearful

HENRY HUDSON’S CREWMEN MUTINY

After spending a desperate and long winter trapped in ice on (today’s Hudson Bay)

mutiny was on the mind of the crewmembers

When the *Discovery* was freed by melting ice conditions improved enough

for the *Discovery* to set sail once again -- spring 1611

Hudson decided to continue sailing westward in search of a Northwest Passage

Hudson’s crewmutinied and set Hudson, his teenage son John,

and seven crewmen who were either sick or loyal to Hudson adrift in an open boat

marooning them in Hudson Bay -- June 1611

*Discovery* sailed away leaving those who were stranded never to be heard from again

only a handful of the sailors made it back to England aboard the Discovery

these mutineers were later put on trial, but were not punished for the mutiny

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN CONTINUES HIS EXPLORATIONS FOR FRANCE

Samuel de Champlain, the founder of Quebec and the discoverer of Lake Champlain,

was granted a monopoly by French government to establish the fur trade -- 1612

on condition he push exploration westward

shares in his company were divided

among the merchants of Saint Malo and Rouen, France

Champlain served as Governor of New France in every way except the title

which was probably deigned him because he was not of noble birth

however, Pierre Du Gua de Monts and Francois Grave Pontgrave

competed with Champlain and each other for trade with the Indians

EARLY ENGLISH ATTACKS ON FRENCH SETTLEMENTS IN CANADA

Lieutenant General Pierre Du Gua de Monts had expanded his Port-Royal settlement

on the Bay of Fundy

two fur trading and fishing stations were set up on the west bank -- by 1613

Both of the French settlements on either side of the Bay of Fundy

were totally destroyed in a raid conducted by English Captain Samuel Argall -- 1613

THIRTY YEARS’ WAR SWEEPS ACROSS EUROPE

Thirty Years’ War was a series of wars involving most of the countries of Europe

principally fought in Central Europe -- 1618-[1648]

it was one of the longest and most destructive conflicts in European history

Thirty Years’ War took place largely as a religious war between Catholics and Protestants

although disputes over internal politics and the balance of power within the Empire

also played a significant part

Among the great traumas caused by the war was a major outbreak of witchcraft persecutions

that took place in Germany following the first phase of the Thirty Years’ War

residents of Germany had been devastated not only by the conflict itself,

but also by various crop failures, famines and plagues

they were quick to blame these calamities on supernatural causes

allegations of witchcraft against fellow citizens flourished

900 men, women and children were burned at the stake in Germany [1630]

Thirty Years’ War rearranged the power structure of Europe

Spain grew steadily weaker

she was forced to accept the independence of the Dutch Republic

France became increasingly powerful -- much to the concern of England

PILGRIMS COME TO NORTH AMERICA

While Protestants protested aspects of the Roman Catholic Church,

radical Protestants protested aspects of the Protestant Church of England

one of these groups became known as “Separatists”

because they desired to separate from the Church of England

whose church rituals they believed were too Catholic

they practiced a religion independent of the dominate church’s traditions

and organizations

Separatists moved to Holland which was more liberal in its religious tolerance than England

soon all connection with the Church of England was severed

Some of the Separatists living in Holland decided to establish a colony on North America

where they would be free to practice their independent religion

they applied for a charter from the England’s Virginia Company to establish a colony

it was decided the younger and stronger members would depart first

these colonists became known as “Pilgrims” (travelers)

Two ships were prepared for the Atlantic Ocean crossing

sixty-ton *Speedwell* sailed from Holland to England

to meet its sister ship, the 180-ton *Mayflower*

however, the *Speedwell* proved not to be seaworthy

*Mayflower­* set sail from Plymouth, England under Captain Christopher Jones

with thirty-five sailors and 102 Separatist Pilgrims -- September 16, 1620

seventy-three men (nineteen were servants) and twenty-nine women (three servants)

only about twenty-eight Pilgrims were members of the Separatist congregation

they called themselves “the Saints”

others, “the Strangers,” were members of the crew of the *Mayflower*,

paying passengers and craftsmen needed to construct the colony

Pilgrims’ charter to establish a colony had not been completed when they sailed

Storms hit the *Mayflower* which was blown off course

after a dreadful sixty-five-day crossing land was sighted -- November 9, 1620

two days were spent investigating their location -- this was not Virginia

they were not where their charter, when it became finalized, was legal

In an effort to keep the members of the colony working together a meeting was held

some Pilgrims felt because they had no charter and this was not Virginia

they were free to do as they chose

many of the other colonists chose to establish a government and drafted an agreement

most adult men, but not the crew or servants or women,

signed the “Mayflower Compact” aboard ship -- November 11, 1620

when disputes arose the resolution would be decided by a vote of the majority

London merchant John Carver was elected governor of Plymouth colony

Peregrine (meaning one who journeys to foreign lands) White

son of Susanna and William White was born -- November 20, 1620

as the Pilgrims remained on the *Mayflower* deciding where to settle

he was the first English child born to the Pilgrims in the New World

Exploring the area they found themselves in was delayed

because the small boat they brought had been partially dismantled

and placed in the ship’s hold -- it was damaged during the crossing

Pilgrims did not land until -- December 21, 1620

Soon after the landing was complete, Peregrine White’s father died and his mother remarried

her marriage to Edward Winslow was the first wedding in the New World

Winslow later adopted Peregrine and made him an heir

COMPANY DE CAEN IS ORGANIZED BY FRENCH KING LOUIS XIII

Lieutenant General Pierre Du Gua de Monts’ and Samuel de Champlain’s Company

did not take their responsibilities seriously

only one family had been sent to Canada to settle

its monopoly was abolished by King Louis XIII

Champlain returned to France -- 1620

ANOTHER FRENCH TRADING COMPANY IS CHARTERED IN L’ACADIE (CANADA)

French King Louis XIII granted a New Charter

for fur trading operations in l’Acadie (Canada)

Pierre Du Gua de Monts trading operation and Samuel de Champlain’s Company

were merged into a new enterprise -- Company of De Caen

under the control of two French merchants from the city of Rouen

William De Caen and his nephew -- 1622

Company of De Caen prohibited settlers of New France from trading with the Indians

this ended a one-hundred-year tradition of free trade between Indians and Europeans

and stopped ten thousand years of free trade tradition among the natives

control of the trade by the Company of De Caen

was designed to give power and authority to a few selected people

it perpetuated poor leadership

it also discourages innovation and adaptation

Liquor was brought from France by the Company of De Caen in large barrels

but for overland travel in l’Acadie (Canada) liquor, mainly brandy,

was divided into small kegs

when it was traded with the natives it was diluted with water to acquire more furs

Indians learned that good liquor would flame up when poured on a fire

but when diluted it would put the fire out

thus good liquor was identified as “fire water”

FRENCH GOVERNMENT DEVELOPS THE POSITION OF PRIME MINISTER

(French nobleman Armand Jean de Plessis de Richelieu

was consecrated as a Catholic bishop [1608]

Bishop Richelieu entered politics and became Secretary of State of France [1616]

Richelieu became a Catholic Cardinal consolidating his political and clerical powers -- 1622

Cardinal Richelieu is considered to be the world’s first Prime Minister

he transformed France into a strong, centralized state

Cardinal Richelieu believed that colonies existed to enrich the mother country

by exporting raw materials and by importing finished manufactured products

JUAN DE FUCA’S STORY IS DISTRIBURED ON A WIDE SCALE

Apostolos Valerianos’ (Juan de Fuca) report to Michael Lok became part of Samuel Purchas’

famous book of fact and fiction: *Purchas, His Pilgrimes* -- published 1625

Vol. III. Page 849 states, in substance: In the year [1592], the Viceroy of Mexico sent a pilot, named Juan de Fuca, on a voyage of discovery to the northwest. De Fuca followed the coast **“untill he came to the Latitude of fortie seven degrees, and that there finding that the land trended North and North-east, with a broad Inlet of sea, betweene 47, and 48, degrees of Latitude; hee entered thereinto, sayling therein more than twenty dayes, and found that Land trending sometime North-west and North-east, and North, and also East and South-eastward, and very much broader Sea then was at the said entrance, and that he passed by divers lands in the sayling.”[[54]](#footnote-54)**

Other parts of the account of his voyage also seem correct

he noted there was an **“…exceedingly high pinnacle or spired rock like a pillar thereupon” at the entrance of the strait”[[55]](#footnote-55) --** it is true a great strait lies not far beyond 47º

This raises everal questions regarding Sir Frances Drake’s [1577-1578] voyage:

•how did what seemed to be the Strait of Juan de Fuca appear on maps

twenty years before the water passage was discovered by a Spanish sailor?

•why was California portrayed for more than a century as an island?

•was (today’s British Columbia and Washington State) mapped in 1580]?

•why did the English search for 200 years for a Northwest Passage that did not exist?

KING OF FRANCE CHARTERS A NEW TRADING COMPANY

Cardinal Armand Jean de Plessis de Richelieu created the Company of New France

(also known as the One Hundred Associates)

he recruited a hundred French Roman Catholic men of wealth and affluence

as partners in his new enterprise

Cardinal Richelieu’s Company of New France was not owned by small town merchants

its principal stockholders were Parisians

All previous grants and monopolies were cancelled -- April 25, 1627

Cardinal Richelieu became absolute master of l’Acadie (New France now Canada)

his Company of New France was given authority over North America

from Florida to the Arctic Circle,

from Newfoundland to Lake Huron forever -- April 25, 1627

Company of New France was granted a permanent monopoly over the fur trade

and a monopoly for fifteen years all other trade except cod fishing and whale fishing

which remained open to all French subjects

all merchandise to or from New France was to be free of duty for fifteen years

Company of New France was free to distribute lands

this company reproduced the feudal conditions then existing in France

it lavishly bestowed huge tracts of land on personal favorites and Catholic Church leaders

enormous tracts of land were granted to Seigneurs (private land owners)

until all of the individual estates combined totaled 5,888,716 acres[[56]](#footnote-56)

an additional 2,096,754 acres[[57]](#footnote-57) were granted to the Catholic Church in the 1600s

Catholic clergy and its orders accumulated great wealth from rents and tithes

or by borrowing from church members at absurdly low interest rates

COMPANY OF NEW FRANCE BEGINS OPERATION

Only Roman Catholics were allowed to join Cardinal Richelieu’s Company of New France

no Huguenot (French protestant) or foreigner was allowed into New France

Company of New France depended to a large extent on individual or itinerant traders

who roamed afar among the Indian tribes and brought back their bales of pelts and furs

inhabitants already there who were not part of the Company

were free to barter with the Indians on the condition they must sell their furs

to the Company at a fixed price

Native Americans were easily persuaded to exchange furs for trivial trinkets

and the art of persuasion was assisted by gratuities of liquor

No one could trade with natives without an annual license from the Company of New France

French officials were free to cancel these licenses any time they wanted

Indians who became Catholic were acknowledged to be French citizens

NORTH AMERICAN FUR TRADE PROVIDES VAST WEALTH TO EUROPE

While European monopolies dominated the fur trade, company charters also required

annual payment to the national government and to finance military expenditures

Vast wealth in the fur trade created enforcement problems for the monopoly in New France

unlicensed independent traders, *coureurs de bois* (or “runners of the woods”),

began to do business in the late 17th and early 18th centuries

French traders did not develop any system and made no permanent establishments

as a result New France developed a unique class structure:

•at the top were the Catholic clergy;

•next came the nobility;

•third were the members of the judiciary;

•last were the common people;

•Native Americans did not rate on the scale at all

Company of New France held its monopoly until [1663]

FUR TRADING IN NORTH AMERICA EXPANDS

Company of New France led the transition from a seasonal coastal fur trade

into a permanent interior fur trade

Fur trade became one of the main economic ventures in North America attracting Europeans

French, British, Dutch, Spanish and Russians competed for vast amounts of beaver pelts

Beavers are an intelligent animal which feed on tree bark and twigs

they are defenseless on land

beavers cut down trees and chew off the branches with their sharp front teeth they drag the limbs into the stream or dig canals to float the branches into the stream

they possess amazing skill at building dams across streams to generate a flood

they live in the lake behind the dam

that surrounds their lodge with water for protection

beaver dams may be straight if the current is slow or curved if the current is swift

they plug holes in the dam with twigs or stones plastered with mud

Fur trappers would break a hole in the dam and place a trap in the hole

when the beaver attempted repairs it was trapped and drowned

(so many beaver were killed they almost became extinct

and have been completely eliminated from some areas)

FUR TRADE BRINGS VAST CHANGES TO NATIVE AMERICANS

Fur trade brought profound changes to the indigenous people

living along the St. Lawrence River

European goods, such as iron axe heads, brass kettles, cloth, and firearms

were bought with beaver pelts and other furs

Destruction of beaver populations along the St. Lawrence heightened the fierce competition

between the Iroquois and Huron Indians for access to rich fur-bearing lands

Metis (descendants of French trappers and native women) entered the independent trade

where personal contacts and experience in the fur trade were important

and gave an edge to independent traders over the more bureaucratic monopolies

many Indian societies across the continent came to depend on the fur trade

as their primary source of income

Even more significantly, new infectious diseases brought by the French decimated natives

disease combined with warfare led to the near destruction of the Huron natives [by 1650]

WAR BETWEEN CATHOLICS AND PROTESTANTS SWEEPS ACROSS EUROPE

Anglo-French War was part of Europe Thirty Year’s War -- 1627-[1629]

most of the fighting took place at sea but some fighting took place in l’Acadie (Canada)

Gervase (Jarvis) Kirke, was a wealthy London-based merchant

who formed the Company of Adventurers to Canada -- 1627

commissioned by King Charles of England to drive the French from Canada

Gervase Kirke’s son, David Kirke, set off with three ships

they sailed the Saint Lawrence River to the French trading post Tadoussac

David Kirke seized one supply ship going to Quebec -- 1628

then demanded Samuel de Champlain surrender Quebec -- Champlain refused

Kirke decided against an attack on Quebec and returned to England

en route he encountered the French supply fleet bound for Quebec and defeated it

Colonists at Quebec were left waiting for the arrival of badly needed provisions

Kirke and his mercenaries were well aware of the dire situation of the French colonists

they pledged to return to seize Quebec the following year

Champlain realized that the settlement was in great danger

MASSACHUSETTS BAY COMPANY IS CHARTERED BY THE KING OF ENGLAND

England’s King Charles was considerably less tolerant than his father, King James had been

Charles dissolved Parliament (the English government) several times [1625-1640]

Charles was suspicious of the Puritans

these Protestant protestors wanted to “purify” the Church of England

Charles’ persecution of Puritans led them to decide to seek a new life in the New World

Several distinguished Puritan businessmen, including attorney John Winthrop,

formed a venture called the “Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay”

(Massachusetts Bay Company)

this company received a land grant from the Council of New England

(successor to the ineffective Virginia Company) --1628

soldier and local legal official John Endecott (sometimes Endicott)

was given the task of establishing a colony in what was called Massachusetts Bay

ENGLISH PURITANS ARRIVE IN NORTH AMERICA

John Endecott, his wife and a small group of settlers sailed from England

on the *Abigail* -- June 20, 1628

they arrived at Massachusetts Bay -- September 1628

this was not the first group of Protestants to travel to the New World

Pilgrims had first made the journey eight years earlier

they had established several colonies

One of the Pilgrim colonies was located

where the Massachusetts Bay Company wanted their colony

after some discussion, the earlier settlers

amicably accepted the authority of John Endecott

in celebration this expanded colony was renamed Salem -- Hebrew for peaceful

John Endecott served as the first governor of the Salem settlement

MORE PURITANS ARRIVE IN MASSUSECHETTS BAY COLONY

Massachusetts Bay Company leader John Winthrop organized a fleet of eleven ships

to transport 700 Puritans from England to join John Endecott in Salem -- April 1630

John Winthrop became the governor of the new, much larger, Massachusetts Bay Colony

he chose the area of Boston to establish his capital

Thomas Dudley was elected deputy governor

Massachusetts Bay Colony was virtually independent of England

territory they administered included portions of (today’s Massachusetts, Maine,

New Hampshire, Rhode Island and Connecticut)

Puritans effectively created a theocracy

(a government run by religious officials to enforce religious principles)

although its governors were elected, the voters were limited to male church members

who owned land

as a result colonial leadership exhibited intolerance to other religious views

(For the next ten years there was a steady exodus of Puritans from England

about 10,000 people migrated to Massachusetts Bay and neighboring colonies

many ministers reacting to newly repressive religious policies of England

made the trip with their flocks John Cotton, Roger Williams, Thomas Hooker

and others became leaders of Puritan congregations)

Religious divisions within Massachusetts Bay Colony and the need for additional land

prompted a number of Puritans to migrate from Massachusetts Bay Colony

these migrations resulted in the creation of Connecticut Colony led by Hooker

Rhode Island and Providence Plantations were founded

(led by Williams and exiled Puritan Anne Hutchinson)

John Wheelwright, like Anne Hutchinson, was banished from Massachusetts Bay,

led his congregation north to found Exeter, New Hampshire

Region of (today’s New England) was dominated by the Puritan church

and its government officials

SECOND FRENCH SETTLEMENT IS FOUNDED IN NEW FRANCE

After Quebec City [1608] a tiny French trading post on the St. Lawrence River

was ordered constructed by Governor of New France Samuel de Champlain -- 1634

this became Trois-Rivieres (Three Rivers)

the second permanent settlement in New France

Three Rivers’ fort enclosed a few homes and shops which would become very active

in the fur trade

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN, GOVERNOR OF NEW FRANCE, DIES

Samuel de Champlain, navigator, cartographer, soldier, explorer, Quebec City founder,

historian, Company of New France Governor and Governor of New France

died -- December 25, 1635

he became known simply as the “Father of New France”

PIERRE ESPIRIT RADISSON IS CAPTURED BY IROQUOIS INDIANS

Born in Saint Malo, France about 1636 Pierre Espirit Raddison

arrived in New France (Canada) at age fifteen – 1651

he settled at the frontier trading post of Three Rivers on St. Lawrence River

Radisson was captured by Iroquois Indians the next year -- 1652

he appeared to be adopted into the tribe, but in actuality he remained a captive

Radisson and another captive were hunting with three tribesmen – early 1654

they murdered the Indians while they slept[[58]](#footnote-58)

they both fled toward the nearest settlement -- the outpost at Three Rivers

near the village they were recaptured, tortured and returned to captivity

Radisson set out to prove to his captors that he had converted to the native way of life

he recorded in his journal that he practiced the worst kind of barbarism

Radisson finally made good his escape to a Dutch post

reaching Fort Orange (Albany, New York) --1654

Radisson returned to Europe where he traveled to Amsterdam and La Rochell, France

FRENCH FUR TRAPPER TRADE IN THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER REGION

Pierre Espirit Raddison returned from Europe to Three Rivers on St. Lawrence River

journeying with his brother-in-law Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers

they explored and traded in the upper Mississippi River region --1656

where they bought furs from the Algonquin Indians

Radisson and des Grosseilliers reached the confluence of the Mississippi and Missouri rivers

they were the first Europeans to see the Mississippi River

although its significance escaped them --1657

A FORTUNE IN FURS IS DELIVERED TO MONTREAL

Pierre Espirit Raddison and his brother-in-law Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers

wintered in Sioux country on the southwest shore of Lake Superior -- 1659-1660

they were the first white men to enter the region (that is now Minnesota)

Radisson and des Groseilliers returned to the east with a rich cargo of several thousand pelts

carried by a convoy of 100 canoes paddled by 300 men

forty canoes turned back -- sixty made it through

of these a quarter were left in Montreal with the remainder taken to Three Rivers

When Radisson and des Groseilliers reached Quebec City

they were saluted by cannons fire from the fort and three ships in the harbor

after formally recognizing the fur traders’ contribution to the economy of the city

they were imprisoned by the French governor for having left without permission

they were heavily fined and their trade goods were confiscated

Radisson and des Groseilliers told no one what they knew

about the Mississippi/Lake Superior region

they wanted to develop the trade for themselves before telling others

however, the French governor refused to give them permission to leave Quebec City

to return to the frontier

Des Groseilliers crossed the Atlantic Ocean and returned to France

to seek help from the French government -- but found none

he returned to Quebec City without any prospects

Des Groseilliers and Radisson traveled to Boston seeking financial support

once again they failed to find support

but they met an Englishman, Colonel George Cartwright,

who took the two men with him to England to be presented to King Charles II

COMPANY OF NEW FRANCE COMES TO AN END

Cardinal Richelieu’s Company of New France (or the One Hundred Associates)

had failed to organize the thousands of colonists in America that had been promised

French King Louis XIV disbanded the Company of New France

and created a new political body to reorganize the colonization of New France

“Sovereign Council of New France” was composed of three officers -- 1663

• “Intendant of New France” was responsible for law and order

and served as presiding officer of the meetings of the Sovereign Council

• “Governor General of New France” managed military and diplomatic relations

• “Bishop of New France” was responsible for all spiritual matters in New France

RADISSON AND GROSEILLERS SWITCH FROM FRENCH BACKING TO ENGLISH

Pierre Esprit Radisson and his brothers-in-law Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers

had not received the consideration from the French government

they believed they deserved

They reported to England’s King Charles II’s government

that a great area rich in furs lay north of Lake Superior

these furs could be reached by way of Hudson Bay

Radisson and Grosseilliers, established a small post, Fort Nelson, on the narrow neck of land

that separates the mouth of the Nelson River from the mouth of the Hayes River

on southwestern shore of Hudson Bay -- 1663

(shortly thereafter it was taken over by the French

and the name was changed to Fort Bourbon

this post will change hands several times in the next ten years)

RADISSON AND GROSEILLERS EXPLORE FOR ENGLAND

Pierre-Esprit Radisson and Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers

secured financial backing from an English syndicate

headed by Prince Rupert, the cousin of King Charles II -- 1668

Radisson and Grosseilliers set out for the Mississippi/Lake Superior region

traveling by way of Hudson Bay -- June 3, 1668 to[1669]

Groseilliers traveled on the *Nonsuch* and Radisson aboard the *Eaglet*

*Eaglet* returned to England when she was caught in a storm

To bypass French controlled areas along the St. Lawrence River

Medard des Groseilliers led his expedition to (today’s James Bay

(then called Hudson Bay rather than being identified as a bay of its own)

des Groseilliers reached the mouth of a river he named after their sponsor Prince Rupert

(Rupert River later played a vital role in supplying inland trading posts

with regular canoe brigades)

Groseilliers constructed Rupert House (originally called Fort Charles after the English king)

Groseilliers’ expedition spent the winter there -- 1668-1669

trade relations were established with the Indians and the land was formally “purchased”

300 natives came to the post to trade -- spring 1669

When the ice broke in James Bay precious furs were loaded on board and *Nonsuch*

des Groseilliers returned to England where he gave a glowing report of his findings

to Prince Rupert and the government of King Charles II

FRENCH RULES REGARDING THE USE OF LIQUOR IN THE FUR TRADE CHANGE

Sovereign Council of New France eliminated the ban against the trading of alcohol

with the Indians which was impossible to enforce -- 1669

this was replaced by a new policy that allowed plying the Indians with liquor

but prohibited drunkenness among the Indians

HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY IS ORGANIZED IN ENGLAND

English King Charles II found a way to reward those

who aided him in his ascent to the throne

by granting a charter for a company to develop a monopoly

over the Indian Trade, especially the fur trade, in (Canada)

“Governor and Company of Adventurers of England Trading into Hudson Bay”

(or Hudson’s Bay Company or HBC) was granted a charter -- May 2, 1670

at the time the Hudson’s Bay Company Charter was granted by the King England

(Canada) was French territory

Lord Selkirk led seventeen other stockholders including: the King’s cousin Prince Rupert,

the Duke of Albemarle, the Earl of Craven, Lord Ashley, the Earl of Shaftesbury,

Lord Arlington, General Monk, Sir John Robinson, Sir Charles Vyner,

Sir George Carteret, other knights and London merchants

HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY RECEIVES ITS CHARTER

Hudson’s Bay Company had three goals:

•build a lucrative fur trade;

•colonize into the West;

•discover the Northwest Passage to the Pacific Ocean

According the Hudson’s Bay Company Charter:

•the **“Company** [is] **endowed with exclusive and perpetual monopoly of trade and commerce of all those seas, straits, bays, rivers, lakes, creeks, and sounds, ‘in whatsoever latitude they shall be,’ that lay within the entrance of the Hudson’s Straits ‘together with all the lands, countries, and territories’ adjacent to those waters ‘not now possessed by any of our own subjects or the subjects of any other Christian Prince or State.”[[59]](#footnote-59)**

•the “**Company was granted possession of the lands, mines, minerals, timber, fisheries, etc., and was vested with the full power of making laws, ordinances, and regulations at pleasure, and of revoking them at pleasure. It could also impose penalties and punishments, ‘provided they are reasonable, and are not repugnant to the laws of ‘England’.”[[60]](#footnote-60)**

•moreover, if necessary the Company could request the assistance

of His Majesty’s armed forces in the enforcement of the powers granted in the charter

British navy and army were at the command of the Company **“For protection of its trade and territory the Company was empowered to employ an armed force, appoint commanders, erect forts and take other necessary measures.”[[61]](#footnote-61)**

HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY WAS IN CHARGE OF RUPERT’S LAND (CANADA)

England’s King Charles II provided trading privileges for all land drained into Hudson Bay

this region constituted 1.5 million square miles

over one-third the area of (modern day Canada)

and stretched into the north central region of (today’s United States)

specific boundaries were unknown at the time

this region became known as “Rupert’s Land”

named after Prince Rupert, first director of the company

and a first cousin of King Charles II

Rent was composed of **“two elks and two black beavers whenever and as often as ‘His Majesty, and his Majesty and his successors’ should enter their (the Company’s territories).…”[[62]](#footnote-62)**

Hudson’s Bay Company was the English government for Canada

(rights to govern was not granted to the present Canadian government until [1869])

HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY USED POST SYSTEM

Hudson’s Bay Company (HBC) was empowered to stop the French fur trade at its

Port-Royal settlement on Bay of Fundy and its Quebec post on the St. Lawrence River

Hudson’s Bay Company factories (trading posts) were built on (James Bay),

a part of Hudson Bay,

(Rupert House, Hudson Bay Company’s first factory, had been built on James Bay

by Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers two years before the company

was founded [1668])

Fort Albany was constructed on southern shore of the Albany River-- 1670

Moose Factory was built by Pierre Radisson at the mouth of the Moose River

on the southern end of James Bay [1673]

HBC Employees known as “factors”were assigned to manage trading posts (factories)

HBC never even pretended to send its trappers into the wilderness in search of furs

HBC relied on local natives to do the trapping and bring their catches to them

Indians became dependent on the Company

Hudson’s Bay Company made two-way profit:

•cheap trade goods were purchased by the Indians at very prices;

•furs purchased cheaply from the natives were sold in Europe for a very high profit

Profits consistently were so great, notwithstanding the constant battle against French traders,

that Hudson’s Bay Company declared dividends of from 25% to 50% annually

(eventually profits soared -- governors resorted to “stock watering”

so profits would appear less -- still profits climbed to an unbelievable 600% a year

HBC became so rich that governors paid little attention to management in North America

the company remained a trading company rather than a trapping company

Presence of both British and French trading companies in eastern Canada

resulted in international cutthroat competition and military strife

ENGLISH EAST INDIA COMPANY OPENS TRADE WITH CHINA

Having overcome opposition from Asian merchants, Portuguese and Dutch traders

English East India Company secure a trading post in Taiwan, China --1672

English East India Company was soon engaged in direct and regular trade with the Chinese

company merchants were allowed to trade from port to port in Asia in all but a few goods

which were reserved for the Company

merchants were also allowed to send precious stones, carpets and textiles back to England

Portugal’s monopoly on east-west trade through Macau, China came to an end

England, Holland, France, Denmark, Sweden States and Russia

(later followed by the United States) moved into the China trade

establishing factories and offices in Macau and Canton (Guangzhou)

TWO FRENCH EXPLORERS DESCEND THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER

Governor of New France Comte de Frontenac sent an expedition to the Mississippi River

Father Jacques Marquette, a studious Catholic Jesuit two weeks shy of turning thirty-six,

Louis Joliet, a twenty-seven-year-old philosophy student who become a fur trader

To confirm rumors of a great southward running river

they traveled in two canoes paddled by five voyageurs -- May 1673

Marquette and Joliet did not discover the Mississippi River

Spanish explorer Hernando De Soto had crossed it more than a century before them

Indians had been using it for thousands of years

Marquette and Joliet traversed (today’s Wisconsin) -- summer 1673

and followed the Mississippi hundreds of miles south to (today’s Arkansas River)

far enough to confirm that it drained into the Gulf of Mexico

but not so far that they would be captured by the Spanish

their 2,500-mile canoe trip opened the heart of North America to France

they introduced Christianity into 600,000 square miles of wilderness,

they gave French names to the future cities from La Crosse to New Orleans,

they transformed traditional Indian cultures

Marquette and Joliet proved:

•it was possible to travel easily from the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico by water,

•native peoples who lived along the route were generally friendly,

•natural resources of the lands in between were extraordinary

Both men kept records of the voyage

but as Louis Joliet traveled toward his home in Quebec

his canoe overturned outside Montreal and all of his records and notes were lost

all that remained of his experiences was an interview about where he had gone

and what he had seen

(Father Jacques Marquette’s two manuscripts lay unread in a Jesuit archive for 150 years

only an abridged version of their travels appeared at the time [1681])

RADISSON AND GROSEILLERS CHANGE ALLIANCES ONCE AGAIN

Pierre-Esprit Radisson and Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers spent their time

journeying back and forth between England and Hudson Bay

advising their employers about provisions and trading commodities until 1675

however, during these years there was growing apprehension in New France

about the activities of the two explorers and of the Hudson’s Bay Company

Radisson and des Grosseilliers were persuaded to return to French allegiance

but both men constantly changed their loyalty between France and England

whenever they felt they are not properly rewarded for their services

These wavering allegiances became a significant part of the diplomatic triangle

involving Louis XIV of France, Charles II of England and Hudson’s Bay Company

Des Grosseilliers saw the easiest and quickest route to the richest fur region on the continent

was not by the difficult, dangerous and time-consuming canoe highway

through the Great Lakes and along the Grand-Portage–Lake of the Woods waterway,

but across Hudson Bay in ships carrying large cargoes quickly and easily

to the very heart of the continent

(Radisson and des Grosseilliers monument in history was the Hudson’s Bay Company itself

despite his role in the history of Canada, the place and date

Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers’ death is unknown

Pierre-Esprit Radisson became a citizen of England [1687]

and died almost destitute [1710])

ATTEMPTS ARE MADE TO DISPRUPT FRENCH TRADE

Iroquois Indians dominated the economically important Great Lakes fur trade

these natives long had been in conflict with the leaders of New France

At the urging of New England colonists the Iroquois interrupted the trade

between New France and the western tribes

in retaliation, New France leaders sent invaders

to Seneca Indian lands of western New York

There were similar tensions on the border between New England and New France

English settlers from Massachusetts Bay (whose charter included today’s Maine area)

had expanded their settlements into New France

RENE-ROBERT CAVALIER, SIEUR DE LA SALLE, EXPLORES THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER

Following up on the exploration of Father Jacques Marquette and fur trader Louis Joliet

King Louis XIV sent Rene-Robert Cabalier, Sieur de la Salle with eighteen Indians

to travel south from Canada down the Mississippi River

to the Gulf of Mexico -- 1682

La Salle built the small Fort Prudhomme (today’s Memphis, Tennessee)

Robert La Salle’s expedition reached the Gulf of Mexico -- April 9, 1682

there he built a cross, buried an engraved plate

and claimed all the land drained by the Mississippi River for France

La Salle named this gigantic region *Louisiana* in honor of the French king

On his return trip up the Mississippi River La Salle established Fort Saint Louis

on the Illinois River

HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY ESTABLISHES YORK FACTORY

York Factory was located at the mouth of the Hayes River

on the southwestern shore of Hudson Bay (in today’s northeastern Manitoba, Canada)

York Factory, named after the Duke of York, was constructed

to replace the much fought for Fort Nelson on the Hayes River -- 1684

York Factory served as a trading post, distribution point and administrative center

for a massive Hudson’s Bay Company fur trading empire reaching far into the wilderness

(millions of dollars in trade goods will be shipped in and out of Canada from here)

FRENCH RAIDING PARTY CAPATURES THE HUDSON’S BAY COMPANY FACTORIES

French Army Captain Chevalier des Troyes led a party of soldiers and Canadian militiamen

810 miles to chase the English from James Bay

Fort Moose was easily captured by the French -- June 20, 1686

both Hudson’ Bay Company Rupert House and the ship HMS *Craven*

were captured -- July 3

Fort Albany fell -- July 26

England and France officially declared war on each other --1688

struggle for control of the Canadian fur trade had begun

it resulted cutthroat competition and years of international strife

ENGLISH-FRENCH RIVALRY SPILLS ONTO NORTH AMERICA

Catholics and Protestants had not yet learned to dwell together,

or even near each other, in harmony

New France was purely Catholic in government

England’s colonies on the eastern seaboard were wholly Protestant

with the exception of Maryland but even Maryland had a large Protestant majority

France wanted to maintain control and expand its valuable North American possessions:

•rich fur-bearing St. Lawrence River area;

•cod fishing along the Grand Banks of Newfoundland;

•vast region of Louisiana drained by the Mississippi River

England was jealous of these resources and wanted to expand its own empire

beyond the Atlantic coast of New England

King William’s War erupted in North America -- 1689-[1697]

Governor General of New France Louis de Buade, Comte de Frontenac et de Palluau

instigated Indian massacres against England’s northern colonies -- July 1689

Dover, New Hampshire, a town of fifty settlers, was burned to the ground

half the people were massacred; the others were carried away

and sold into slavery

Pemaquid, Maine met a similar fate a month later

Schenectady, New York was attacked and burned -- February 1690

more than sixty were massacred, many were taken captive,

a few escaped into the night

towns of Casco and Salmon Falls soon were similarly attacked

English and French battled for control of the English James Bay factories

French forces under the command of Pierre Le Moyne Sieur d’Iberville,

added York Factory to the growing list of captured English forts -- 1694

England was left with lone posts on the west side of Hudson Bay

Fort Severn at the mouth of the Severn River

during King William’s War these trading posts would change hands several times

# BIBLIOGRAPHY

Aitken, Jonathan, *Nixon; A Life,* Regnery Publishing, Washington D.C., 1993.

Allen, William, *An American Biographical and Historic Dictionary, Containing an*

*Account of the Lives, Characters, and Writings of the Most Eminent Persons in North America from it First* *Settlement, and a Summary of the History of the Several Colonies and of the United States*, J. Griffin Press, Brunswick, Maine,1832.

Almont Lindsey, *The Pullman Strike, The Story of a Unique Experiment and of a Great Upheaval,*

The University of Chicago Press, 1942.

Ambrose, Stephen, *The Christmas Bombings*, New York: Random House, 2005.

Ambrose, Stephen and Douglas Brinkley, *Witness to America, An Illustrated Documentary of*

*the History of the United States from the Revolution to Today*, HarperCollins Publishers,

1999.

Anderson, David L. editor, *The Columbia History of the Vietnam War*, New York: Columbia

University Press, 2011.

Andra-Warner, Elle, *David Thompson: A Life of Adventure and Discovery,* Heritage House

Publishing, Victoria, B.C., 2010.

Babcock, Chester, and Claire Applegate Babcock. *Our Pacific Northwest.* New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1963.

Bagley, Clarence B, *Early Catholic Missions in Old Oregon*, Volume 1 and 2. Lowman and

Hanford Company, Seattle 1932.

Bagley, Clarence, History of Seattle from the Earliest Settlement to the Present Time,

Vol. I and II, The S.J. Clarke Publishing Company: Chicago, 1916.

Baldwin, Leland D. *The Stream of American History* Vol. I & II, New York American Book Company, 1952.

Bancroft, Hubert Howe, *History of the Northwest Coast.* San Francisco: A.L. Bancroft Co., 1884.

Bancroft, Hubert How, *History of Washington, Idaho, and Montana,* Volume XXIX

San Francisco: The History Company, Publishers, 1890.

Bancroft, Hubert How, *History of Washington, Idaho, and Montana,* Volume XXXI

San Francisco: The History Company, Publishers, 1890.

Bartlett, Laura B. Downey. *Students’ History of the Northwest and State of Washington, Vol. I.* Tacoma, Washington: Smith-Digby Co., 1922.

Barnouw*,* Erik, *The Golden Web: A History of Broadcasting in the United States:* Volume 2:

1933-1953, New York: Oxford University Press, 1968.

Benson, E.F. *Sir Francis Drake*. New York: Harper and Brothers, 1927. Biddle, Nicholas, ed.

*The Journals of the Expedition Under the Command of Capts. Lewis and Clark ….1814.*

Reprint, New York: Heritage Press, 1962,

Berner, Richard C. *Seattle 1900-1921: From Boomtown, Urban Turbulence, to Restoration,*

Seattle: Charles Press, 1991.

Berton, Pierre, Klondike: The Last Great Gold Rush, 1896-1899, Pierre Berton Enterprises, Ltd.,

Anchor Canada 1972.

Berton, Pierre. *The Quest for the Northwest Passage and the North Pole, 1818-1909*, Viking

Books, New York, 1988.

Bishcoff, William N. S.J., *The Jesuits in Old Oregon.* The Caxton Printers, LTD., Caldwell,

Idaho, 1945.

Blee, Lisa, *Framing Chief Leschi: Narratives and the Politics of Historical Justice,* University of

North Carolina Press, 2014.

Blumenthal, Richard W. editor, *With Vancouver in Inland Washington Waters* McFarland &

Company, Inc. Publishers, North Carolina, 2007.

Bonneville Power Administration, *Fish and Wildlife Implementation Plan: Final Environmental Impact Statement*, Vol. 1, 1932.

Boorstin, Daniel. *The Discoverers: A History of Man’s Search To Know His World And Himself,*

Random House, New York, 1983.

Bork, Janine M. copyright 2000-2003, *History Of The Pacific Northwest Oregon and Washington*. Compiled and Published by the North Pacific History Company Portland, Oregon, 1889.

Bourne, Edward Gaylord, *Essays in Historical Criticism,* Charles Scribner’s Sons, New York,

1901.

Brackenridge, Henry M., *Views of Louisiana, Together with a Journal of a Voyage up the*

*Missouri River in 1811,* Cramer, Spear and Eichbaum, Pittsburg, 1814.

Bragg, L.E., *More Than Petticoats: Remarkable Washington Women.* Falcon Publishing, Inc. Helena, Montana, 1998.

Brazier, Don, *History of the Washington Legislature 1854-1963,* Published by the Washington

State Senate, Olympia, Washington, 2000.

Brooks, Noah, *First Across the Continent,* Scribers, Sons, New York, 1901.

Brosnan, Cornelius J., *Jason Lee, prophet of New Oregon,* The Macmillan Co, New York, 1932.

Brown, Hillary, *The Life and Times of Ester Clark Short,* self-published, February 2011.

Bryce, George. *Remarkable History of the Hudson’s Bay Company*. New York: Charles Scribner’s Sons, 1910.

Calder, Jenni, *Scots in Canada,* Luath Press, Limited Edinburgh, Scotland, 2004.

Carey, Charles Henry, *History of Oregon,* The Pioneer Historical Publishing Company,

Chicago-Portland, 1922.

Carpenter, Cecelia Svinth, Tears of Internment: The Indian History of Fox Island and the Puget

Sound Indian War. Tahoma Research Service, Tacoma, Washington. 1996.

Carver, Jonathan. *Three Years Travels Through the Interior Parts of North America.* Philadelphia: Key and Simpson, 1796.

Chapman, Charles. *History of California: The Spanish Period.* MacMillan Co., New York, 1921.

Chittenden, Hiram Martin. *The American Fur Trade of the Far West*. New York: E.P. Harper,

1902.

Churchill, Ward, Jim Vander Wall, *Agents of Repression: The FBI's Secret Wars Against the*

*Black Panther Party & the American Indian Movement*, South End Press, Boston,

Massachusetts, 1988.

Clark, Norman H., *Mill Town -- A Social History of Everett, Washington*, *from Its Earliest*

*Beginnings on the Shores to Puget Sound to the Tragic and Infamous Event Known as the*

*Everett Massacre,* University, University of Washington Press, Seattle, 1970.

Clarke, Samuel Asahel, *Pioneer Days of Oregon, Vol II.* Portland, Oregon: J.K. Gill Company,

1905.

Cockburn, Alexander; Jeffrey St Clair, *Whiteout: The CIA, Drugs and the Press*. Verso Books,

Brooklyn, New York, 1999.

Commons, John Rogers. I*ndustrial Government (American Labor, from Conspiracy to Collective*

*Bargaining*) Series I. MacMillan Company, New York, 1921.

Cook, James. *Voyages of Captain James Cook*. London: Richard Phillips, 1809.

Cook Warren L., Flood Tide of Empire: Spain and the Pacific Northwest; 1543-1819.

Yale University Press, 1973.

Corning, Howard McKinley. *Dictionary of Oregon History.* Portland, Oregon: Binfords & Mort, 1989.

Coues, Elliot. *History of the Expedition Under the Command of Lewis and Clark*. New York:

Francis P. Harper, 1893.

Coues, Elliott, editor, *New Light on the Early History of the Greater Northwest* *-- the Manuscript*

*Journals of Alexander Henry, Fur Trader of the Northwest Company and of David*

*Thompson Official Geographer of the same Company, 1799-1814* in Three Volumes,

Francis P. Harper, New York,1897.

Cox, Ross, *Adventures On The Columbia River, Including The Narrative Of A Residence Of Six*

*Years On The Western Side Of The Rocky Mountains, Among Various Tribes Of Indians*

*Hitherto Unknown*, Binfords and Mort, Portland, Oregon, 1950.

Crawford, Lewis F., *The Exploits of Ben Arnold: Indian Fighter, Gold Miner, Cowboy, Hunter, &*

*Army Scout,* University of Oklahoma Press, Norman, Oklahoma 1999.

Crutchfield, James A. *It Happened In Washington: Remarkable Events that Shaped History,.* Helena, Montana: Falcon Press Publishing Co., Inc., 1995.

Custer, Elizabeth Bacon, *Tenting on the Plains: Or, General Custer in Kansas and Texas*,

Harper & Brothers Publishers, New York, 1895.

Daniels, Roger, *Asian America: Chinese and Japanese in the United States since 1850.* University of Washington Press, Seattle, 1988.

Dale, Harrison Clifford. *The Ashley-Smith Explorations, and the Discovery of a Central Route to*

*the Pacific*. Cleveland: Arthur A. Clark, 1918.

Davison, Gordon Charles. *The North West Company*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1918.

Deloria, Vine, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest From the Coming of the White Man to the*

*Present Day,* Doubleday &Company, 1977.

De Smet, Pierre-Jean, S.J., *Life, Letters and Travels of Father Pierre-Jean De Smet: 1801-1873*

Crabtree, Oregon: Narrative Press, 2005*.*

De Smet, Pierre-Jean S.J., Oregon Missions. Reprint of New York Edition, 1847, Applewood

Books, Carlisle, Massachusetts, 2007.

Dimsdale, Thomas Josiah, *The Vigilantes o Montana, A Correct History of the Chase, Capture,*

*Trial, and Execution of Henry Plummer’s Notorious Road Agent Band, D.W. Tilton,*

*Publisher, Virginia City, Montana, 1882.*

Dodds, Gordon B. *The American Northwest: A History of Oregon and Washington.* The Forum

Press, Inc. Arlington Heights, Illinois, 1986.

Douglas, William O. *Go East, Young Man.* New York: Random House, 1974.

[Downey-Bartlett](http://www.google.com/search?tbo=p&tbm=bks&q=inauthor:%22Laura+Belle+Downey-Bartlett%22), Laura Belle, *Student’s History of the Northwest and the State of Washington.*

Smith-Digby Company, Tacoma, Washington, 1922.

Downs, L. Vaugh, [*The Mightiest of Them All: Memories of Grand Coulee Dam*](http://books.google.com/books?id=3jwKsyNHpJoC&printsec=frontcover&source=gbs_ge_summary_r&cad=0#v=onepage&q&f=false), USA: American

Society of Civil Engineers, 1993.

Drury, Clifford Merrill, *On to Oregon: The Diaries of Mary Walker and Myra Eells*, University of

Nebraska Press, 1963.

Dryden, Cecil. *Up the Columbia For Furs.* Caldwell, Idaho: Caxton Printers, Ltd., 1949.

Dryden, Cecil. *Dryden’s History of Washington.* Portland, Oregon: Binfords & Mort, 1968.

Duncan, Dayton. *Miles From Nowhere: Tales From America’s Contemporary Frontier.* New York: Viking Penguin, 1993.

Dye, Eva E. *McLoughlin and Old Oregon*. Portland, Oregon: Binfords and Mort, 1938.

Dye, Eva Emery, *Stories of Oregon,* The Whitaker and Ray Company, San Francisco, 1900.

Eckrom, J.A., *Remembered Drums, A History of the* Puget *Sound Indian War,* Pioneer Press

Books, Walla Walla, Washington, 1989.

Egan, Timothy, *The Good Rain*, Vintage Books, 1990.

Ellington, Charles G., *The Trial of U.S. Grant: The Pacific Coast Years 1852-1854.* Glendale, California: Arthur H. Clark, 1986.

Evans, Elwood, *History of the Pacific Northwest: Oregon and Washington, Vol. I*., North Pacific

History Company, Portland, Oregon, 1889.

Farber, David, *Chicago '68,* University of Chicago Press. 1988.

Farquhar, Francis P., *History of the Sierra Nevada*, University of California Press, Berkeley and

Los Angeles, California, 1965.

Federal Writers Project, *Washington: A Guide to the Evergreen State*, The Washington State

Historical Society, 1941

Ficken, Robert E., *The Forested Land: A History of Lumbering in Western Washington*, University of Washington Press, Seattle, WA, 1987.

Findlay, John M and Ken S. Coates, editors, *Parallel Destenies: Canadian-American Relations*

*West of the Rockies,* University of Washington Press, 2002.

Fitcher, James R., So Great a Proffit: How the East Indies trade transformed Anglo-American

capitalism, Harvard College, 2010.

Ford, Henry, *My Life and Work,* Doubleday, New York, 1922.

Flowers, Betty Sue (editor). *Joseph Campbell The Power of Myth with Bill Moyers.* Doubleday,

New York, 1988.

Foreman, Laura, editors of Time-Life Books: *Serial Killers -- True Crime.* 1992.

France, George W., *The Struggle for Life and Home in the Northwest,* I. Goldmann, Stream

Printer, New York, 1890.

Franchere, Gabriel and Jedediah Huntington, *Franchere’s Narrative of a Voyage to the*

*Northwest Coast, 1811-1814*. Applewood Books, Carlisle, Massachusetts, 1854.

Franchere, Gabriel, Journal of a Voyage on the North West Coast of North America during the

Years 1811, 1812, 1813 and 1814, Toronto: The Champlain Society, 1969.

Fuller, George W. *A History of the Pacific Northwest,* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Inc., 1931.

Gass, Patrick. *A Journal of the Voyages and Travels of a Corps of Discovery Under the*

*Command of Captain Lewis and Captain Clarke, 1804, 1805, & 1806.* Pittsburg: David

M’Keehan, 1808.

Gibbs, Al. Article “The News Tribune”, May 17, 1992.

Goetzmann, William H. *Army Exploration in the American West: 1803-1863.* Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1979.

Godwin, George. *Vancouver, a Life*. New York: Appleton and Co., 1931.

Golder, F.A., *Bering’s Voyages*, Vol I & II. New York: Octagon Books, Inc., 1922.

Golder, F.A. *Russian Expansion on the Pacific*. Cleveland: Arthur H. Clark Co., 1914.

Gough, Barry M., The Royal Navy and the Northwest Coast of North America, 1810 - 1914,

University of British Columbia Press, Vancouver, British Columbia, 1917.

Gray, Alfred O. *Not By Might: The Story of Whitworth College. 1890-1965*. Spokane: Whitworth

College, 1965.

Greenwald, Richard A., *Exploring America’s Past: A Reader in Social, Political and Cultural*

*History, 1865-Present,* University Press of America, Inc. Lanham, Maryland, 1996.

Groves, Leslie, *Now It Can Be Told: The Story of the Manhattan Project*, Harper, New York,

New York, 1962.

Haeberlin, Hermann and Erna Gunther. *The Indians of Puget Sound.* University of Washington Press, Seattle, Washington, 1930.

Hamann, Jack, *On American Soil How Justice Became a Casualty of WWII,* Algonquin Books of

Chapel Hill, North Carolina, 2005.

Hamilton, Neil A., *The 1970s,* Facts on File Inc., New York, New York, 2006.

Hamilton, Neil A., *Rebels and Renegades: A Chronology of the Social and Political Dissent in*

*the United States,* The Muscovites Group, Inc. New York, New York, 2002.

Hansen, James R, *First Man: The Life of Neil A. Armstrong*, Simon & Schuster Paperbacks, New York, 2005.

Hare, Robert D., PhD., *Without Conscience: The Disturbing World of the Psychopath Among*

*Us*. The Guildford Press, New York, 1999.

Harper, Ida Husted, The History of Woman Suffrage, J.J. Little & Ives Company, New York

1922.

Hauka, Donald J., *McGowan's War*, New Star Books Vancouver British Columbia, 2003.

Hayes, Derek. *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and The Pacific Northwest*. Delta B.C.,

Canada: Cavendish Books Inc., 1999

Hefferman, Trova, *Where the Salmon Run: The Life and Legacy of Billy Frank, Jr.,* University of Washington Press, 2012.

Henry, Alexander. *New Light on the Early History of the Greater Northwest*. Edited by Elliot

Coues. New York: F.P. Harper, 1897.

Hidy, Ralph W., Frank Ernest Hill, Allan Nevins. *Timber and Men: The Weyerhaeuser Story.*  MacMillan Co., New York, 1963.

Hill, Beth. *The Remarkable World of Frances Barkley: 1769-1845.* Sidney, B.C.: Gray’s, 1978.

Hirabayashi, Gordon K., *A Principled Stand: The Story of Hirabayashi v. United States,*

University of Washington Press, 2013.

Hixon, Adrietta Applegate, *On to Oregon,* Ye Galleon Press, Fairfield, Washington 1973.

Hosansky, David, *Eyewitness to Watergate: A Documentary History for Students,* CQ Press, Washington, D.C., 2007.

Hunt, Hebert, *Tacoma: Its History and Its Builders; a Half Century of Activity*, The S.J. Clarke Publishing Company, Chicago Seattle Tacoma,1916.

Hunt, Hebert and Floyd C. Kaylor. *Washington West of the Cascades.* The S.J. Clarke

Publishing Company, Chicago Seattle Tacoma, 1917.

Igler, David, *The Great Ocean, Pacific Worlds From Captain Cook to the Gold Rush*, Oxford

University Press, 2013.

Inez, Emily Denny. *Blazing the Way.* Seattle: Rainier Printing Co. 1909.

Irving, Washington. *Astoria*. Portland, Oregon: Binfords and Mort, 1950.

Jensen, Vernon H., *The great strike of 1935, Lumber and Labor,* New York: Farrar and

Rinehart, Ind, 1945.

Jessett, Thomas, editor. *Report and Letters of Herbert Beaver, 1836-1838. Portland, Oregon: Champoeg Press, 1959.* XI-XXIV.

Johanningsmeier, Edward P., *Forging American Communism, The Life of William Z. Foster*,

Princeton University Press, 1994.

Johansen, Dorothy O. and Charles Gates. *Empire of the Columbia.* New York: Harper &

Brothers, 1957. Second edition: 1967.

Johnson, William Henry. *The French Pathfinders in North America.* Boston: Little Brown, and

Co., 1905.

Johnson, Wellwood R. *Legend of Langley.* Langley, B.C.: Langley Centennial Committee,1958.

Jordan, John H., *Born Black in the U.S.A*, RoseDog Books, Pittsburg, Pennsylvania, 2016.

Josephy, Alvin M., *The Nez Perce Indians and the Opening of the Northwest,* Houghton Mifflin

Harcourt, 1997.

Judson, Katherine, B. *Early Days in Old Oregon.* Chicago: A.C. McClurg & Co., 1916.

Judson, Phoebe Goodell, *A Pioneer’s Search for an Ideal Home: A Book of Personal Memoirs,*

University of Nebraska Press, 1984.

Kennedy, David M. *The American People in World War II, FREEDOM FROM FEAR PART II,*

Oxford University Press, 1999.

Kerber, Linda K., *No Constitutional Rights to Be Ladies: Women and the Obligations of*

*Citizenship,* [Farrar, Straus and Giroux](https://www.facebook.com/fsgbooks/?ref=page_internal), New York, 1998.

Keyes, Erasmus Darwin, Brevet Brigadier-General, *Fifty Years' Observation of Men and Events: Civil and Military*. Reprint Kessinger Publishing, Whitefish, Montana, 2007.

Kip, Lawrence, *Indian War in the Pacific Northwest: The Journal of Lieutenant Lawrence Kip*,

University of Nebraska Press: Lincoln, Nebraska and London, England, 1999.

Krause, Fayette Florent. *Democratic Party Politics in the State of Washington during the New*

*Deal,* PhD. diss., U of W, 1971.

Lahey, Dale, *George Simpson: Blaze of Glory*, Dundurn Press, Tronto, Canada, 2011.

Lambert, Dale. *The Pacific Northwest: Past, Present, and Future.* Wenatchee, Washington:

Directed Media, Inc., 1979. Second edition: 1986.

Lang, Herbert O Himes and George Henry Himes, *History of the Willamette Valley,* Portland, Oregon, G.H. Himes, book and job printer, 1885.

Laveille, E. J.S., *The Life of Father De Smet 1801-1873,* J.P. Kennedy & Sons, New York,

1915.

Lee, W. Storrs. *Washington State: A Literary Chronicle.* New York: Funk & Wagnalls, 1969.

Lent, D. Geneva. *West of the Mountains: James Sinclair and the Hudson’s Bay Company.*

Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1963.

LeWarne, Charles Pierce, *Utopias on Puget Sound, 1885–1915*, University of Washington

Press, 1975.

Lien, Carsten, *Olympic Battleground: Creating and Defending Olympic National Park*.

Mountaineers Books, Seattle, WA., 2014.

Lillard, Charles, J*ust East of Sundown: The Queen Charlotte Islands,* Horsdal and Schubart

Publishers, Ltd., Victoria, B.C., Canada. 1995.

Lingeman, Richard R., *The Nation. Guide to the Nation,* Vintage Books, 2009.

Lockley, Fred. *Conversations With Pioneer Women.* Eugene, Oregon: Rainy Day Press, 1981.

Loewen, James W. *Lies My Teacher Told Me.* New York: The New Press,1995.

Lyman, William Denison. *The Columbia River: Its History, Its Myths, Its Scenery, Its,*

*Commerce.* New York: G.P. Putnam’s Sons, 1917.

MacDonald, Angus. *Few Items of the West.* Washington Historical Quarterly Vol. 8, 1917.

Magden, Ronald E, and Martinson, A.D., *Working Waterfront: The Story of Tacoma's Ships and*

*Men,* Tacoma: International Longshoremen’s Local Nineteen, 1982.

Mackenzie, Alexander. *Alexander Mackenzie’s Voyage to the Pacific Ocean in 1793,* Chicago:

R.R. Donnelly and Sons, 1931.

Mackenzie Sir Alexander, *Voyages from Montreal Through the Continent of North America to the*

*Frozen and Pacific Oceans in 1789 and 1793,* Vol. 1, A. S. Barnes & Company:

New York, 1903.

McCoy, Keith. *Cody: Colorful Man of Color.* White Salmon, Washington: Pahto Publications,

1988.

McDonald, Lucile. *Search for the Northwest Passage.* Binfords & Mort, Portland, Or., 1958.

McNaughton, Wayne Leslie and Joseph Lazar Smith, *Industrial Relations and the Government*,

McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1954.

Magee, James J., *Freedom of Expression*, Greenwood Press, Westport, Connecticut, 2002.

Magnuson, Senator Warren G. *Magnuson Papers,* U. of W.

Maguire, Lori editor, *The Cold War and Entertainment Television,* Cambridge Scholars publishing, 2016.

Manchel, Frank, *Film Study: An Analytical Bibliography*, Volume 4, Fairleigh Dickinson University Press, Madison, New Jersey, 1990.

Markholt, Ottlie, *Maritime Solidarity, Pacific Coast Unionism 1929-1938.* Pacific Coast Maritime

History Committee, Tacoma, Washington, 2007.

Martin, Albro, James J. Hill and the Opening of the Northwest, Minnesota Historical Society Press, St Paul, 1976.

Mearse, John. *Voyages made in the Years 1788 and 1789.* London, 1790.

Meany, Edmond S. *Vancouver’s Discovery of Puget Sound*. Portland, Oregon: Binfords and

Mort, 1949.

Meany, Edmond Stephen, *History of the State of Washington*, The MacMillan Company,

New York, 1910.

Meeker, Ezra, *Ox-team Days on the Oregon Trail*, World Book Company, Yonkers-on-Hudson,

New York, 1922.

Meeker, Ezra. *Pioneer Reminiscences of Puget Sound: The Tragedy of Leschi* Lowman & Hanford, Seattle. 1905.

Meeker, Ezra. Story of the Lost Trail To Oregon self-published by the author: Seattle, 1915.

Reprinted by Ye Galleon Press: Fairfax, Washington, 1998.

Meeker, Ezra, *Ventures and adventures of Ezra Meeker, or, Sixty years of frontier life,* Rainier Printing and Publishers, Seattle, Washington, 1909*.*

Menzies, Archibald, *Menzies’ Journal of Vancouver’s Voyage April to October, 1792*. Edited by

C.F. Newcombe. Victoria, B.C.: W.H. Cullin, 1923.

Michaud, Stephen and Aynesworth, Hugh, *Ted Bundy: Conversations with a Killer*, Penguin

Group, London, England, 1990.

Morgan, Murray C., “Nelson Bennett and the Stampede Pass Tunnel,” *Murray’s People A*

*Collection of Essays*. Tacoma Public Library Northwest Room, 1960.

Morgan, Murray, *Seattle -- Her First Hundred Years.* Ballantine Books. New York,1960.

Morgan, Murray, *Skid Road,* Ballantine Books. New York,1960.

Morgan Murray C., *The John Meares Expeditions*: *The Last Wilderness* University of

Washington Press, 1955.

Morgan, Murray, The Last Wilderness. Viking Press: New York, 1955.

Morison, Samuel Eliot, *The Maritime History of Massachusetts* 1783-1860, Houghton, Mifflin

Company, 1921.

Moulton, Gary E. editor, *The Lewis and Clark Trail Yesterday and Today,* University of Nebraska Press, Lincoln, Nebraska, 1988.

Nelson, Polly, *Defending the Devil: My Story as Ted Bundy’s Last Lawyer*. William Morrow

and Company,New York, 1994.

Newell, Gordon R. *Ships of the Inland Sea: the Story of Puget Sound Steamboats.* Portland:

Binford & Mort, 1951.

Niethammer, Carolyn. *Daughters of the Earth, The Lives and Legends of American Indian*

*Women.* New York: Simon & Schuster, 1977.

Nisbet, Jack, *Sources of the River: Tracking David Thompson Across Western North America*,

Sasquatch Books, 1994.

Nobleman, Marc Tyler, *The Klondike Gold Rush*, Compass Point Books, Minneapolis,

Minnesota, 2006.

Nokes, Richard J., *Almost a Hero: the Voyages of John Meares, R.N., to China, Hawaii, and the*

*Northwest Coast*, Washington State University Press,1998.

Northwest Public Power Association, *Power Unlimited*. Spokane, Washington: Northwest Public

Power Association, 1947.

O’Meara, Walter. *The First Northwest Passage.* Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company,1960.

Orloff, Richard W., Apollo by the Numbers: A Statistical Reference, NASA History Series. Washington, D.C., 2000.

Palladino L.B., S.J. *Indian and White in the Northwest; A History of Catholicity in Montana,*

*1831-1891.* Baltimore John Murphy & Company, 1894.

Palmer, Joel, *Journal of travels over the Rocky Mountains, to the Mouth of the Columbia River,*

J.A. & U.P. James, Walnut Street, Cincinnati, Ohio, 1847.

Parks, Jared. *The Life of John Ledyard: The American Traveller*, Kessinger Publishing, LLC,

Whitefish, Montana, 2006.

Parsons, William and W.S. Shiach, *An Illustrated History of Umatilla County and Morrow*

*County,* W. H Lane Publisher, 1902.

Peltier, Jerome, *Madame Dorion.* Ye Galleon Press. Fairfield, Washington, 1980.

Plesch, Dan, *America,* *Hitler and the UN: How the Allies Won World War II and Forged Peace*.

I. B. Tauris, New York, 2011.

Pelz, Ruth. *The Washington Story.* Seattle: Seattle Public Schools, 1979.

Pearlman, Michael D., *Truman and MacArthur:* Indiana University Press, Bloomington, Indiana, 2008.

Pickett, Thomas Edward, *A Soldier of the Civil War,* The Burrows Brothers Company,

Cleveland, Ohio, 1900.

Pieroth, Doris H. *The Hutton Settlement: A Home for One Man's Family.* Spokane, WA:

Washington State University Press, 2003.

Pollard, Lancaster. *A History of the State of Washington.* Binfords & Mort, Publishers: Portland,

Oregon, 1941.

Portlock, Nathaniel. *A Voyage Round the World*. Dublin: J. Whitworth, 1789.

Price, Andrew, Jr. Port Blakely: The Community Captain Renton Built. Seattle: Port Blakely

Books, Publishers, 1989.

Poole, Lisa with Dianne Robinson, *Torpedo Town U.S.A. A History of the Naval Undersea*

*Warfare Engineering Station 1914-1989.* Diamond Anniversary Publishing Keyport, WA,

1989.

Quaife, Milo M. *Journals of Captain Meriwether Lewis and Sergeant John Ordway*. Madison,

Wisconsin Historical Society, 1916.

Rader, Melvin. *False Witness*. University of Washington Press, 1969.

Ramsay, Guy Reed, *Postmarked Washington: Thurston County*, Thurston County Historic

Commssion,1988.

Read, Anthony, *The World on Fire: 1919 and the Battle with Bolshevism,* W.N. Horton &

Company, New York, London, 2008.

Rhodes, Richard, *The Making of the Atomic Bomb*, New York: Simon and Schuster, 1986.

Richards, Kent D., Isaac I. Stevens: Young Man in a Hurry, Brigham Young University Press,

1979.

Richardson, A.D. *Beyond the Mississippi.* Hartford, 1867.

Richardson, David. *Pig War Islands.* Eastsound, Washington: Orcas Publishing, 1971.

Roberts, John E., *A Discovery Journal, George Vancouver’s First Survey Season - 1792,*

Trafford Publishing, Victoria, B.C., Canada, 2005.

Roe, JoAnne, *Stevens Pass: The Story of Railroading and Recreation in the North Cascades.*

Caxton Press, Caldwell, Idaho, 2002.

Ronda, James P. *Astoria & Empire.* University of Nebraska Press. Lincoln, Nebraska: 1990.

Ross, Alexander. *Adventures of the First Settlers on the Oregon or Columbia River*. London: Smith, Elder, & Co. 1849.

Ross, Alexander, One of the Adventurers. *John Jacob Astor, To Establish the ‘Pacific Fur Company:’ With an Account of Some Indian Tribes on the Coast of the Pacific*. London: Smith, Elder and Company, 1849.

Ruby, Robert and John A. Brown, The Cayuse Indians, University of Oklahoma Press, 1972.

Rule, Ann, [*The Stranger Beside Me*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Stranger_Beside_Me), New York: Signet. 1989.

Safire, William, *Safire's Political Dictionary*, Oxford University Press, 2008.

Saindon, Robert A. editor, *Explorations Into the World of Lewis and Clark.* Vol. I-II, Lewis and

Clark Trail Heritage Foundation, Inc., Great Falls, Montana, 2003.

Sales, Roger. *Seattle: Past and Present.* University of Washington Press. Seattle, WA 1976.

Scates, Shelby. *Warren G. Magnuson and the Shaping of Twentieth-Century America*.

University of Washington Press. Seattle, WA 1997.

Schafer, Joseph, PhD. *A History of the Pacific Northwest.* New York: The MacMillan Co., 1951.

Scofield, William E. *Northwest Heritage.* New York: Amsco School Publications, Inc., 1978.

Schwantes, Carlos Arnaldo. *The Pacific Northwest: An Interpretive History*. University of

Nebraska Press,1989.

Shardlow, Tom, *Mapping the Wilderness: The Story of David Thompson,* Napoleon and Co.

Toronto, Canada, December 30, 2006.

Shea, John Dawson Gilmary, *History of Catholic Missions Among the Indian Tribes of the*

*United States,1529-1854.* Ayer Company Publishers, Inc., Manchester, N.H. 1969.

Shimabukuro, Robert Sadamu, *Born in Seattle: The Campaign for Japanese American*

*Redress,* University of Washington Press, 2001.

Shipiro, David L. *Generating Failure*. Lanham, Maryland.: University Press of America, 1989.

Simpson, George. *An Overland Journey Round the World During the Years 1841 and 1842*, 2

vols. in 1. Philadelphia: Lea and Blanchard, 1847.

Sister Mary (Catherine McCrosson), *The Bell and the River,* Pacific Books Publishers, Palo Alto, California, 1957.

Skinner, Constance Lindsay, *Adventurers of Oregon:* A Chronicle of the Fur Trade, Yale University Press, 1920.

Smith, Jean Edward, *FDR*, Random House, 2007.

Smith, Walker C. The Everett Massacre, I.W.W. Publishing Bureau, Chicago, 1918.

Snowden, Clinton A. *History of Washington*. New York: Century History Co., 1909.

Speck, Gordon. *Northwest Explorations.* Portland, Oregon: Binfords & Mort, 1954.

Sperber, Ann M., *Murrow, His Life and Times*, Fordham University Press, New York, New York, 1999.

Splawn, A.J., *KA-MI-AKIN, The Last Hero of the Yakimas,* Kilham Stationery and Printing Co.,

Portland Oregon, 1917.

Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, Susan B. Anthony, and Matilda Joslyn Gage, *History of Woman*

*Suffrage,* Vol 1, 1848-1861, Fowler & Wells, New York Publisher, 1881.

Stenehjem, Michele Gerber, On the Home Front, University of Nebraska Press, Lincoln,

Nebraska, 2002

Strange, James. *James Strange’s Journal and Narrative of the Commercial Expedition from*

*Bombay to the Northwest Coast of America*. Madras: Government Press, 1928.

Strawn, Arthur. *Sails & Swords Being the Golden Adventurers of Balboa and His Intrepid*

*Company, Freebooters All, Discoverers of the Pacific*. New York: Brentano’s, 1928.

Steber, Rick. *Loggers: Tales of the Wild West Vol 7.* Bonanza Publishing, Prineville, Or., 1989.

Stuart, David. *Discovery of the Oregon Trail*. New York: Charles Scribner’s Sons, 1935.

Swan, James Gilchrist, *The Indians of Cape Flattery, at the entrance to the Strait of de Fuca,*

*Washington Territory***,** Washington Smithsonian Institution, 1870.

Swann, Brian and Arnold Krupat, editors, *Recovering the Word: Essays on Native American*

*Literature,* University of California Press, 1987.

Szasz, Ferenc Morton, *The Day the Sun Rose Twice: The Story of the Trinity Site Nuclear Explosion July 16, 1945*, University of New Mexico Press, Albuquerque, 1984.

Terrill, John. *Black Robe: The Life of Pierre Jean DeSmet Missionary, Explorer, Pioneer.*

Doubleday & Company, New York, 1964.

Timmen, Frit. *Blow for the Landing-- A Hundred Years of Steam Navigation On the Waters of*

*the West.* Caxton Printers, Caldwell, Idaho, 1972.

Thorpe, Lloyd. *Men To Match The Mountains.* Seattle: Craftsman & Met Press, 1972.

Thwaites, Reuben Gold, *Travels in America, 1750-1920,* A.H. Clark Company, Cleveland, Ohio,

1904.

Todd, William, *The Seventy-Ninth New York Volunteers* *in the War of Rebellion,* Press of Brandow, Barton & Co., 1886.

Toland, John, *The Rising Sun: The Decline and Fall of the Japanese Empire, 1936-1945,* The Modern Library, New York, 2003.

Tolmie, William Fraser, *The Journals of William Fraser Tolmie, Physician and Fur Trader*

Mitchell Press Ltd., Vancouver, B.C., 1963.

Torricelli, Robert G, Carroll, Andrew, Goodwin, Doris Kearns, In Our Own Words: Extraordinary Speeches of the American Century, Washington Square Press, 2008.

Towse, Ed. and Prof. W.D. Alexander, Papers of the Hawaiian Historical Society, No. 11, *Some*

*Hawaiians Abroad,* Read before the Society September 15, 1903.

Tyrrelle, J.B. *Hearne, Samuel A Journey from Prince of Wales Fort in Hudson’s Bay to the*

*Northern Ocean in the Years 1769, 1770, 1771 and 1772.* Toronto: Champlain Society,

1911.

Vancouver, George. *A Voyage to the North Pacific Ocean*. London: J. Stockdale, 1801.

Vesilind, Priit J. “National Geographic”.May 1996.

Vestal, Stanley, *Jim Bridger Mountain Man,* First Bison Book, University of Nebraska Press,

Lincoln, Nebraska, 1970.

Victor, Frances Fuller, *The Early Indian Wars of Oregon Compiled from the Oregon Archives*

*and Other Original Sources,* Frank C. Baker, State Printer, Salem, Oregon, 1891.

Vining, Edward P. *An Inglorious Columbus.* New York: D. Appleton and Company, 1885.

Vinton, Stallo, John Colter, *Discoverer of Yellowstone Park*. New York: Edward

Eberstadt, 1926.

Walling, A.G. *History of Southern Oregon, comprising Jackson, Josephine, Douglas,*

*Curry and Coos Counties, compiled from the most authentic sources.* Portland, Ore.,1884.

Waite, Donald E. *The Langley Story.* Maple Ridge, B.C.: Donald Waite Publishing, 1977.

Walbran, John T. Captain. *British Columbia Coast Names.* Vancouver, Canada: J.J. Douglas, Ltd., 1971.

Warren, James R., War *Years: A Chronicle of Washington State in World War II*, University of Washington Press, 2001.

Weber, David J. Barbaros, *Spaniards and Their Savages in the Age of Enlightenment*,

Yale University, 2005.

Welch, William D., A Brief History of Port Angeles, Port Angeles: Crown Zellerbach Corporation,

1968.

Wells, Henry Laurenz, *A Popular History of Oregon from the Discovery of America to the*

*Admission of the States into the Union,* T.W. Hume, Portland, Oregon, 1889.

Wellwood, R. Johnson, *Legend of Langley,* Langley Centennial Committee British Columbia,

1958.

Wilkes, Charles, *Narrative of the United States' Exploring Expedition: During the ...,* Volume 1,

Whittaker and Co., London, 1845.

Wilkinson, Charles, Messages from Frank's Landing: A Story of Salmon, Treaties, and the Indian Way. University of Washington Press, Seattle, 2000.

Williams, Joseph, *Narrative of a tour from the state of Indiana to the Oregon territory in the*

*years 1841-2*, 1921.

Willson, Beckles. *The Great Company.* New York: Dodd, Mead & Co. 1906.

Winther, Oscar Osburn. *The Great Northwest*. New York: Knopf, 1947.

Winther, Oscar Osburn. *The Old Oregon Country: A History of Frontier Trade Transportation*

*and Travel.* Stanford University Press, 1950.

Wood, Charles R., *The Northern Pacific: Main Street of the Northwest, A Pictorial History,*

Bonanza Books. New York, 1968.

Works Projects Administration, *The New Washington: A Guide to the Evergreen State,*

The Washington State Historical Society, 1941.

Wuerthner, George, *Olympic: A visitors Companion*, Stackpole Books, Mechanicsburg, PA., 1999*.*

Wyeth, Nathaniel Jarvis. *The Correspondence and Journals of Captain Nathaniel J. Wyeth*.

Edited by F.G. Young. Eugene, Oregon: University Press, 1899.

Wyeth, Nathaniel, *Wyeth’s Oregon or a Short History of a Long Journey*, Applewood Books,

Carlisle, Massachusetts,1833.

Young, F.G., *Sources of the History of Oregon,* Vol. 1, Eugene Star Job Office, 1897.

Zinn, Howard, *A People’s History of the United States: 1492-Present,* Routleage, Taylor &

Francis Group, London and New York, 1980.

Catalog of the Public Documents of the Seventy-Third Congress… July 1, 1933 to

December 31, 1934.

*History of the Pacific Northwest: Oregon and Washington,* Vol. 1, Compiled and

Published by the North Pacific History Company of Portland, Oregon, 1889.

Oregon Pioneer Association, Transactions of the Fifteenth Annual Reunion, Press of

Geo. H. Himes, Portland, Oregon, 1887.

St. James Encyclopedia of Labor History Worldwide, Vol. 1-2, St. James Press, 2003.

Compiled by Workers of the Writers’ Program of the Work Project Administration in the

State of Washington, *Washington: A Guide to the Evergreen State,* Binfords and Mort,

Portland, Oregon.

# ARTICLES

“Army To Ban Aliens From Coast,” Oakland Tribune, March 3, 1942.

“Army Takes Over Jap Center Site,” *Oakland Tribune*, March 8, 1942.

Atomic Heritage Foundation, [www.atomicheritage.org](http://www.atomicheritage.org)

Bagley, Clarence, The Oregon Historical Quarterly Volume 5, March, 1904-December, 1904.

Bates, Alice L., *Historical Society of Southern California* Volume IX 1912-1913,J.B. Walters,

Printers, 1914.

Carr, Mary M., “Jay Fox: Anarchist of Home,” *Columbia Magazine*, Spring 1990:

Vol. 4, No. 1.

Avery, Brian, “Home Colony,” Washington,”

<http://recollectionbooks.com/siml/library/HomeColony.htm>, 1997.

Center for Columbia River History, Document: “Indian Council in the Valley of the Walla

Walla,” Lawrence Kip, 1855.

Cooley, Michael F. and Mary Lou, for the Officer-Cooley Family Association, *“The*

*Transcribed Diary of Eli Casey Cooley as he came across the Oregon Trail and the*

*Meek Cutoff in 1845,”* [*http://www.oregonpioneers.com/CooleyDiary.htm*](http://www.oregonpioneers.com/CooleyDiary.htm)

De Meulles to the King of France, “1864, Report on Canadian Archives,” 1899 Vol.\

Easton, Charles L. “Equality as a Cooperative Colony,” *The Seattle Times,* Sunday,

November 25, 1962.

Ehrlich, Dorothy M., “Remembering Gordon Hirabayashi,” ACLU, January 11, 2012. [www.aclu.org/blog/racial-justice/remembering-gordon-hirabayashi](http://www.aclu.org/blog/racial-justice/remembering-gordon-hirabayashi)

Erhart, Andie, The Great Depression in Washington State Labor Events Yearbook: 1935,

Civil Rights and Labor History Consortium’ University of Washington.

Farrar, Victor J., *The Nisqually Journal,* The Washington Historical Quarterly

for July, 1915-April, 1916.

Fletcher, Randol B., *“Oregon or the Grave, A fresh perspective on the aftermath of the Lewis &*

*Clark Expedition,”* Oregon Magazine, 2003.

Forney, Gary R., “Wilbur Fisk Sanders, a Force in Early Montana, The Most Unscrupulous Man Who Ever Disgraced the Legal Profession,” The Montana Pioneer, <https://montanapioneer.com>

[Gebhardt](https://www.nasaspaceflight.com/2014/07/45-tranquility-one-small-step-bright-future/), Chris, “45 years after Tranquility: One small step to a bright future,” July 20, 2014, [www.NASASpaceflight.com](http://www.NASASpaceflight.com)

Gibbs, Al. Article “The News Tribune”, May 17, 1992.

Haines, Francis, “How the Indian Got the Horse,” American Heritage, Vol. 15 February 1964.

Klan, Yvonne Means. “Kanaka William,” Beaver Magazine, Canada’s National History Society,

Winnipeg, Manitoba, Spring 1979.

Krause, Fayette Florent. “Democratic Party Politics in the State of Washington during the New

Deal” PhD. diss., U of W, 1971.

Magnuson, Senator “Warren G. Magnuson Papers*,*”University of Washington.

Menefee, Shelden C. *The Nation* Magazine, March 26, 1938. Vol. 146, No. 13, p. 354-355.

Nokes, J. Richard Columbia Anthology: “Patriot or Scalawag?”Columbia Magazine, Fall 1990:

Vol. 4, No. 3.

Northwest Public Power Association, *“Power Unlimited*. Spokane, Washington.” Northwest Public Power Association,1947.

Pipes, Nellie B., “Journal of John H. Frost, 1840-43,” Oregon Historical Quarterly 35, No. 2

(1934), p. 139-167.

Prosch Thomas W., “United States Army in Washington Territory,”Washington Quarterly,

Volume II, Washington University State Historical Society, Seattle, October 1907.

Public Power in Snohomish County, “The fight in Snohomish County*,” www.snopud.com/AboutUs/history/pubpower.ashx?p=1349*

Sadamu Shimabukuro, Robert, “Born in Seattle*:* The Campaign for Japanese American

Redress,” (Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2001.

[Stamm](https://airandspace.si.edu/people/staff/amy-stamm" \o "Amy Stamm)*, Amy, “*We Choose to Go to the Moon and Other Apollo Speeches,” Smithsonian National Air and Space Museum, July 17, 2019.

The Washington Historical Quarterly, Volume X, January, 1919.

Thornton, J. Quinn, “Oregon Pioneer Association Transactions for 1875*.*”

U.S. Department of Transportation Federal Highway Administration, Highway History, *Original Intent: Purpose of the Interstate System 1954-1956,* [*https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/infrastructure/originalintent.cfm*](https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/infrastructure/originalintent.cfm)

Valentine, A.L., “Story of Pioneer Utilities in Seattle” *Railway and Marine News,*

*Vol XIV, March, 1916*

Vesilind, Priit J. “National Geographic” May 1996.

Vouri Mike, *“The Pig War: Standoff at Griffin Bay,”* published by: Discover Your Northwest,

Seattle, WA. 2006.

Watrous, Stephen D. editor, “John Ledyard’s Journey Through Russia and Siberia 1787-1799

The Journal and Selected Letters,”University of Wisconsin Press, 1930.

White, Richard*, “It’s Your Misfortune and None of My Own: A New History of the American*

*West,”* Red River Books, University of Oklahoma Press, Norman, Oklahoma, 1991.

Whitman, Alden*, “Vigorous Defender of Rights,”* *The New York Times*, Sunday,

January 20, 1980.

Wilkinson, Charles, “Messages From Frank’s Landing: A Story of Salmon, Treaties, and the

Indian Way, University of Washington Press, 2000.

Wilkinson, Charles, “The People Are Dancing Again, The History of the Siletz Tribe of Western

Oregon,” University of Washington Press, 2010.

The United Service A Monthly Review of Military and Naval Affairs, L.R. Hamersly

Company, New York, 1902.

Whyte, Kenneth, “The Uncrowned King,” Volume 1, Accessible Publishing Systems PTY, Ltd., 2010. Ziontz, Lenore, “The Anti-Chinese Riots in Seattle” The Pacific Northwest Forum, A Journal

Devoted to the History, Literature, and Environment of the Northwest,

Eastern Washington University, 1976-1997.

# ABOUT THE AUTHOR

I was born in Western Washington and raised in a small village on the shore of the Salish Sea. My professional life was dedicated to teaching primarily Washington State History and United States History at the junior high school level. Of course, I coached for several years. I was active in my local education association serving as president, treasurer and negotiator representing teachers. I also was active in local and state politics. After retiring from teaching I was elected Washington State Senate Sergeant-at-Arms for two four-year terms.  
  
I began *Searchable Pacific Northwest History* as a lecture series to supplement the Washington State History textbooks available for junior high student use. I discovered that an understanding of the present is predicated on an understanding of our past.

1. Geologic Timescale: http://jan.ucc.nau.edu/lrm22/lessons/timeline/24\_hours.html [↑](#footnote-ref-1)
2. William Denison Lyman. *The Columbia River: Its History, Its Myths, Its Scenery. Its Commerce.* P. 7-9. [↑](#footnote-ref-2)
3. locations in parentheses (Cascade) indicate modern names for geographic locations [↑](#footnote-ref-3)
4. S.E. Schlosser, *Coyote and Wishpoosh: from the Chinook Tribe,* americanfolklore.net/folklore/2010/08/coyote\_and\_**wishpoosh**.html. [↑](#footnote-ref-4)
5. Betty Sue Flowers (editor), *Joseph Campbell The Power of Myth with Bill Moyers*, P. 8. [↑](#footnote-ref-5)
6. Carolyn Niethammer, *Daughters of the Earth,* P. 150-151. [↑](#footnote-ref-6)
7. Carolyn Niethammer, *Daughters of the Earth,* P. 156-157.

   [↑](#footnote-ref-7)
8. Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 6.

   [↑](#footnote-ref-8)
9. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington.* P. 10

   [↑](#footnote-ref-9)
10. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington.* P. 14. [↑](#footnote-ref-10)
11. *Canadian Graphic Magazine,* December 2013. [↑](#footnote-ref-11)
12. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington.* P. 14. [↑](#footnote-ref-12)
13. James Lowen, *Lies My Teacher Told Me,*P. 93-94. [↑](#footnote-ref-13)
14. James Gilchrist Swan, *The Indians of Cape Flattery, at the entrance to the Strait of Fuca, Washington Territory***.** [↑](#footnote-ref-14)
15. James Gilchrist Swan, *The Indians of Cape Flattery, at the entrance to the Strait of Fuca, Washington Territory***.** [↑](#footnote-ref-15)
16. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 19.

    [↑](#footnote-ref-16)
17. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 19. [↑](#footnote-ref-17)
18. Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 20 [↑](#footnote-ref-18)
19. Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 14. [↑](#footnote-ref-19)
20. Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 14-15. [↑](#footnote-ref-20)
21. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 21 [↑](#footnote-ref-21)
22. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 22.

    [↑](#footnote-ref-22)
23. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 21.

    [↑](#footnote-ref-23)
24. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington.* P. 12.

    [↑](#footnote-ref-24)
25. Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 13.

    [↑](#footnote-ref-25)
26. Carolyn Niethammer, *Daughters of the Earth.* P. 81-82. [↑](#footnote-ref-26)
27. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 16. [↑](#footnote-ref-27)
28. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 20. [↑](#footnote-ref-28)
29. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 17. [↑](#footnote-ref-29)
30. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 20. [↑](#footnote-ref-30)
31. Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington,* P. 19. [↑](#footnote-ref-31)
32. James Lowen, *Lies My Teacher Told Me,* P. 103 [↑](#footnote-ref-32)
33. James Lowen, *Lies My Teacher Told Me,* P. 101.

    [↑](#footnote-ref-33)
34. Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest,* P. 10. [↑](#footnote-ref-34)
35. Cassandra Tate, *Cayuse Indians*, Essay 10365, HistoryLink.org, April 3. 2013. [↑](#footnote-ref-35)
36. Locations in parenthesis (Mexico) were not known by that name at the time. [↑](#footnote-ref-36)
37. Edward Paysan Vining, *An Inglorious Columbia,* P*.* 300. [↑](#footnote-ref-37)
38. Edward Paysan Vining, *An Inglorious Columbia,* P*.* 359. [↑](#footnote-ref-38)
39. Edward Paysan Vining, *An Inglorious Columbia,* P.265 [↑](#footnote-ref-39)
40. Edward Paysan Vining, *An Inglorious Columbia,* P.265-269. [↑](#footnote-ref-40)
41. Daniel Boorstin, *The Discoverers,* P. 126 [↑](#footnote-ref-41)
42. Daniel Boorstin, *The Discoverers,* P. 128 [↑](#footnote-ref-42)
43. Daniel Boorstin, *The Discoverers,* P. 128 [↑](#footnote-ref-43)
44. Locations in parenthesis (at today’s Brazil) were not known by that name at the time. [↑](#footnote-ref-44)
45. Strawn, Authur, *Sails and Swords,* P. 103. [↑](#footnote-ref-45)
46. James Loewen, *Lies My Teacher Told Me,* P. 37. [↑](#footnote-ref-46)
47. Edmond Meany, *History of the State of Washington,* P. 9. [↑](#footnote-ref-47)
48. Cecil Dryden, *History of Washington*, 1968, P. 28. [↑](#footnote-ref-48)
49. W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State,* P. 3. [↑](#footnote-ref-49)
50. Locations in parenthesis (Canada) were not known by that name at the time. [↑](#footnote-ref-50)
51. Daniel Boorstin, *The Discoverers,* P. 128 [↑](#footnote-ref-51)
52. Lyman, William Denison. *The Columbia River.* P. 44-45. [↑](#footnote-ref-52)
53. from an article in the Seattle Times by Ross Anderson Sunday, August 27, 2000 based on interviews with amateur historians Dick Johnson, Bob Ward and Samuel Bawlf. [↑](#footnote-ref-53)
54. Hayes, Derek, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest,* P. 16. [↑](#footnote-ref-54)
55. Hayes, Derek, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest,* P. 16. [↑](#footnote-ref-55)
56. Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth., Vol. I.,* P. 23. [↑](#footnote-ref-56)
57. Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth, Vol. I.,* P. 16 [↑](#footnote-ref-57)
58. William Henry Johnson. *French Pathfinders in North America,* P. 196. [↑](#footnote-ref-58)
59. Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth., Vol. I.* P. 39. [↑](#footnote-ref-59)
60. Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth., Vol. I.* P. 39. [↑](#footnote-ref-60)
61. Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth., Vol. I.* P. 40. [↑](#footnote-ref-61)
62. Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth., Vol. I.* P. 41. [↑](#footnote-ref-62)